

ETSI TS 123 060 V3.4.0 (2000-07)

Technical Specification

**Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+) (GSM);
Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS);
General Packet Radio Service (GPRS);
Service description;
Stage 2
(3G TS 23.060 version 3.4.0 Release 1999)**



Reference

RTS/TSGS-0223060UR2

Keywords

GSM, UMTS

ETSI

650 Route des Lucioles
F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - NAF 742 C
Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la
Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° 7803/88

Important notice

Individual copies of the present document can be downloaded from:

<http://www.etsi.org>

The present document may be made available in more than one electronic version or in print. In any case of existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions, the reference version is the Portable Document Format (PDF).

In case of dispute, the reference shall be the printing on ETSI printers of the PDF version kept on a specific network drive within ETSI Secretariat.

Users of the present document should be aware that the document may be subject to revision or change of status.

Information on the current status of this and other ETSI documents is available at <http://www.etsi.org/tb/status/>

If you find errors in the present document, send your comment to:
editor@etsi.fr

Copyright Notification

No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission.
The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© European Telecommunications Standards Institute 2000.

All rights reserved.

Intellectual Property Rights

IPRs essential or potentially essential to the present document may have been declared to ETSI. The information pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, is publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: *"Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards"*, which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the ETSI Web server (<http://www.etsi.org/ipr>).

Pursuant to the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by the ETSI 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The present document may refer to technical specifications or reports using their 3GPP identities, UMTS identities or GSM identities. These should be interpreted as being references to the corresponding ETSI deliverables.

The cross reference between GSM, UMTS, 3GPP and ETSI identities can be found under www.etsi.org/key .

Contents

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Foreword | 10 |
| 1 Scope | 11 |
| 2 References..... | 11 |
| 3 Definitions, Abbreviations, and Symbols | 14 |
| 3.1 Definitions | 14 |
| 3.2 Abbreviations..... | 14 |
| 3.3 Symbols | 16 |
| 4 Main Concepts | 17 |
| 4.1 Main GSM Concepts | 17 |
| 4.2 Main UMTS Concepts | 18 |
| 5 General Packet Domain Architecture and Transmission Mechanism | 18 |
| 5.1 Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points | 18 |
| 5.2 Network Interworking | 19 |
| 5.2.1 Internet (IP) Interworking | 19 |
| 5.3 High-Level Functions | 19 |
| 5.3.1 Network Access Control Functions..... | 19 |
| 5.3.1.1 Registration Function | 19 |
| 5.3.1.2 Authentication and Authorisation Function..... | 20 |
| 5.3.1.3 Admission Control Function | 20 |
| 5.3.1.4 Message Screening Function | 20 |
| 5.3.1.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function | 20 |
| 5.3.1.6 Charging Data Collection Function..... | 20 |
| 5.3.2 Packet Routing and Transfer Functions..... | 20 |
| 5.3.2.1 Relay Function | 20 |
| 5.3.2.2 Routing Function | 20 |
| 5.3.2.3 Address Translation and Mapping Function..... | 20 |
| 5.3.2.4 Encapsulation Function | 21 |
| 5.3.2.5 Tunnelling Function | 21 |
| 5.3.2.6 Compression Function..... | 21 |
| 5.3.2.7 Ciphering Function..... | 21 |
| 5.3.2.8 Domain Name Server Function | 21 |
| 5.3.3 Mobility Management Functions | 21 |
| 5.3.4 Logical Link Management Functions (GSM Only) | 21 |
| 5.3.4.1 Logical Link Establishment Function..... | 21 |
| 5.3.4.2 Logical Link Maintenance Functions | 21 |
| 5.3.4.3 Logical Link Release Function..... | 21 |
| 5.3.5 Radio Resource Management Functions | 22 |
| 5.3.6 Network Management Functions | 22 |
| 5.4 Logical Architecture | 22 |
| 5.4.1 Packet Domain Core Network Nodes | 22 |
| 5.4.2 Packet Domain PLMN Backbone Networks..... | 23 |
| 5.4.3 HLR..... | 24 |
| 5.4.4 SMS-GMSC and SMS-IW MSC..... | 24 |
| 5.4.5 Mobile Stations (GSM Only) | 24 |
| 5.4.6 Mobile Stations (UMTS Only)..... | 24 |
| 5.4.7 Charging Gateway Functionality | 24 |
| 5.5 Assignment of Functions to General Logical Architecture..... | 25 |
| 5.6 User and Control Planes | 26 |
| 5.6.1 User Plane (GSM Only) | 26 |
| 5.6.1.1 MS – GGSN | 26 |
| 5.6.1.2 GSN – GSN..... | 27 |
| 5.6.2 User Plane (UMTS Only)..... | 27 |
| 5.6.2.1 MS – GGSN | 27 |
| 5.6.2.2 GSN – GSN | 28 |

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 5.6.3 | Control Plane..... | 28 |
| 5.6.3.1 | MS – SGSN (GSM Only)..... | 28 |
| 5.6.3.2 | MS – SGSN (UMTS Only) | 29 |
| 5.6.3.3 | SGSN - HLR | 29 |
| 5.6.3.4 | SGSN - MSC/VLR..... | 30 |
| 5.6.3.5 | SGSN - EIR..... | 30 |
| 5.6.3.6 | SGSN - SMS-GMSC or SMS-IW MSC..... | 30 |
| 5.6.3.7 | GSN - GSN..... | 31 |
| 5.6.3.8 | GGSN - HLR..... | 31 |
| 5.6.3.8.1 | MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling..... | 31 |
| 5.6.3.8.2 | GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling..... | 32 |
| 5.7 | Functionality Needed for Mobile IP Using IPv4 | 32 |
| 6 | Mobility Management Functionality | 32 |
| 6.1 | Definition of Mobility Management States | 32 |
| 6.1.1 | Mobility Management States (GSM Only) | 32 |
| 6.1.1.1 | IDLE (GPRS) State | 32 |
| 6.1.1.2 | STANDBY State | 33 |
| 6.1.1.3 | READY State | 33 |
| 6.1.1.4 | State Transitions and Functions..... | 34 |
| 6.1.2 | Mobility Management States (UMTS Only)..... | 35 |
| 6.1.2.1 | PMM-DETACHED State | 35 |
| 6.1.2.2 | PMM-IDLE State | 35 |
| 6.1.2.3 | PMM-CONNECTED State | 35 |
| 6.1.2.4 | State Transitions and Functions..... | 36 |
| 6.1.2.4.1 | Error Cases..... | 37 |
| 6.2 | Mobility Management Timer Functions | 37 |
| 6.2.1 | READY Timer Function (GSM Only)..... | 37 |
| 6.2.2 | Periodic RA Update Timer Function..... | 38 |
| 6.2.3 | Mobile Reachable Timer Function..... | 38 |
| 6.3 | Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR | 39 |
| 6.3.1 | Administration of the SGSN - MSC/VLR Association..... | 39 |
| 6.3.2 | Combined RA / LA Updating | 40 |
| 6.3.3 | CS Paging (GSM Only) | 40 |
| 6.3.3.1 | Paging Co-ordination for GPRS | 41 |
| 6.3.4 | CS Paging (UMTS Only)..... | 42 |
| 6.3.4.1 | Network Operation Modes for UMTS..... | 42 |
| 6.3.5 | Non-GPRS Alert | 43 |
| 6.3.6 | MS Information Procedure..... | 43 |
| 6.3.7 | MM Information Procedure | 44 |
| 6.4 | MM Procedures | 44 |
| 6.5 | GPRS Attach Function | 44 |
| 6.5.1 | GSM GPRS Attach Procedure | 44 |
| 6.5.2 | UMTS GPRS Attach Procedure..... | 45 |
| 6.5.3 | Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure..... | 46 |
| 6.6 | Detach Function..... | 48 |
| 6.6.1 | MS-Initiated Detach Procedure..... | 49 |
| 6.6.2 | Network-Initiated Detach Procedure..... | 50 |
| 6.6.2.1 | SGSN-Initiated Detach Procedure..... | 50 |
| 6.6.2.2 | HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure..... | 51 |
| 6.7 | Purge Function..... | 51 |
| 6.8 | Security Function..... | 52 |
| 6.8.1 | Authentication..... | 52 |
| 6.8.1.1 | Authentication of GSM Subscriber | 52 |
| 6.8.1.2 | Authentication of UMTS Subscriber..... | 53 |
| 6.8.2 | User Identity Confidentiality..... | 54 |
| 6.8.2.1 | User Identity Confidentiality (GSM Only)..... | 54 |
| 6.8.2.2 | User Identity Confidentiality (UMTS Only) | 54 |
| 6.8.2.3 | P-TMSI Signature..... | 54 |
| 6.8.2.4 | P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure..... | 54 |
| 6.8.3 | User Data and GMM/SM Signalling Confidentiality..... | 55 |
| 6.8.3.1 | Scope of Ciphering..... | 55 |

| | | |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 6.8.3.2 | Ciphering Algorithm | 55 |
| 6.8.3.3 | Start of Ciphering | 55 |
| 6.8.4 | Identity Check Procedures | 55 |
| 6.8.5 | Data Integrity Procedure (UMTS Only)..... | 56 |
| 6.9 | Location Management Function | 56 |
| 6.9.1 | Location Management Procedures (GSM Only)..... | 56 |
| 6.9.1.1 | Cell Update Procedure..... | 57 |
| 6.9.1.2 | Routeing Area Update Procedure..... | 57 |
| 6.9.1.2.1 | Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update..... | 57 |
| 6.9.1.2.2 | Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update..... | 58 |
| 6.9.1.3 | Combined RA / LA Update Procedure..... | 60 |
| 6.9.1.3.1 | Combined Intra SGSN RA / LA Update..... | 61 |
| 6.9.1.3.2 | Combined Inter SGSN RA / LA Update..... | 63 |
| 6.9.2 | Location Management Procedures (UMTS Only) | 66 |
| 6.9.2.1 | Routeing Area Update Procedure | 66 |
| 6.9.2.2 | Serving RNS Relocation Procedures | 70 |
| 6.9.2.2.1 | Serving SRNS Relocation Procedure..... | 70 |
| 6.9.2.2.2 | Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation Procedure | 74 |
| 6.9.2.2.3 | Combined Cell / URA Update and SRNS Relocation Procedure | 78 |
| 6.9.3 | Periodic RA and LA Updates | 82 |
| 6.10 | Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Function (GSM Only)..... | 82 |
| 6.10.1 | Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure | 83 |
| 6.10.2 | Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure | 83 |
| 6.11 | Subscriber Management Function | 84 |
| 6.11.1 | Subscriber Management Procedures | 84 |
| 6.11.1.1 | Insert Subscriber Data Procedure | 84 |
| 6.11.1.2 | Delete Subscriber Data Procedure..... | 85 |
| 6.12 | Service Request Procedure (UMTS Only)..... | 85 |
| 6.12.1 | Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure..... | 85 |
| 6.12.2 | Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure..... | 87 |
| 6.13 | UMTS - GSM Intersystem Change..... | 88 |
| 6.13.1 | Intra SGSN Intersystem Change | 88 |
| 6.13.1.1 | UMTS to GSM Intra SGSN Change | 88 |
| 6.13.1.2 | GSM to UMTS Intra SGSN Change | 91 |
| 6.13.1.3 | Selective RA Update | 93 |
| 6.13.1.3.1 | Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission..... | 93 |
| 6.13.1.3.2 | Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission..... | 94 |
| 6.13.2 | Inter SGSN Intersystem Change | 94 |
| 6.13.2.1 | UMTS to GSM Inter SGSN Change | 94 |
| 6.13.2.2 | GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change | 98 |
| 6.14 | Classmark Handling..... | 102 |
| 6.14.1 | Radio Access Classmark | 103 |
| 6.14.1.1 | MS Radio Access Capability (GSM Only)..... | 103 |
| 6.14.1.2 | UE Capability (UMTS Only) | 103 |
| 6.14.2 | MS Network Capability | 103 |
| 7 | Network Management Functionality | 104 |
| 8 | Radio Resource Functionality..... | 104 |
| 8.1 | Radio Resource Functionality (GSM Only) | 104 |
| 8.1.1 | Cell Selection and Reselection..... | 104 |
| 8.1.2 | Discontinuous Reception | 104 |
| 8.1.3 | Radio Resource Management..... | 104 |
| 8.1.3.1 | Layer Functions..... | 104 |
| 8.1.3.2 | Model of Operation | 104 |
| 8.1.3.2.1 | Dynamic Allocation of Radio Resources..... | 104 |
| 8.1.4 | Paging for GPRS Downlink Transfer..... | 105 |
| 8.2 | Radio Resource Functionality (UMTS Only) | 106 |
| 8.2.1 | Radio Resource Management..... | 106 |
| 8.2.2 | RRC State Machine..... | 106 |
| 8.2.3 | Paging Initiated by CN..... | 106 |
| 8.2.3.1 | PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN without RRC Connection for CS | 107 |

| | | |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 8.2.3.2 | PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN With RRC Connection for CS | 108 |
| 8.2.4 | Paging Initiated by UTRAN..... | 108 |
| 9 | Packet Routing and Transfer Functionality..... | 109 |
| 9.1 | Definition of Packet Data Protocol States | 109 |
| 9.1.1 | INACTIVE State..... | 109 |
| 9.1.2 | ACTIVE State | 110 |
| 9.2 | PDP Context Activation, Modification, Deactivation, and Preservation Functions | 110 |
| 9.2.1 | Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses..... | 111 |
| 9.2.2 | Activation Procedures | 111 |
| 9.2.2.1 | PDP Context Activation Procedure | 111 |
| 9.2.2.1.1 | Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure..... | 113 |
| 9.2.2.2 | Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure | 115 |
| 9.2.2.2.1 | Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure..... | 116 |
| 9.2.2.2.2 | Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure..... | 116 |
| 9.2.3 | Modification Procedures | 118 |
| 9.2.3.1 | SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure | 119 |
| 9.2.3.2 | GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure..... | 119 |
| 9.2.3.3 | MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure..... | 120 |
| 9.2.3.4 | RNC-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure | 121 |
| 9.2.3.5 | RAB Release-Initiated Local PDP Context Modification Procedure | 121 |
| 9.2.4 | Deactivation Procedures..... | 122 |
| 9.2.4.1 | PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure..... | 122 |
| 9.2.4.2 | PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure | 123 |
| 9.2.4.3 | PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure..... | 124 |
| 9.2.5 | Preservation Procedures | 124 |
| 9.2.5.1 | Release of RABs Triggered by UTRAN | 125 |
| 9.2.5.1.1 | RAB Release Procedure..... | 125 |
| 9.2.5.1.2 | Iu Release Procedure | 125 |
| 9.2.5.2 | Re-establishment of RABs | 126 |
| 9.3 | Packet Routing and Transfer Function..... | 126 |
| 9.4 | Relay Function..... | 127 |
| 9.5 | Packet Terminal Adaptation Function | 127 |
| 9.6 | Encapsulation Function | 127 |
| 9.6.1 | Encapsulation Between GSNs..... | 127 |
| 9.6.2 | Encapsulation Between 3G-SGSN and RNC | 128 |
| 9.6.3 | Encapsulation Between 2G-SGSN and MS | 128 |
| 9.6.4 | Encapsulation Between RNC and MS..... | 128 |
| 10 | Message Screening Functionality | 128 |
| 11 | Compatibility Issues | 128 |
| 11.1 | Interaction between Releases 97/98 and 99..... | 128 |
| 11.1.1 | Interactions Between GTP v0 (R97) and GTP v1 (R99)..... | 128 |
| 11.1.2 | Interactions Between MS R97 and CN R99..... | 129 |
| 11.1.3 | Interactions Between SM R97 and SM R99 | 129 |
| 11.1.4 | Interactions Between MAP R97 and MAP R99..... | 129 |
| 12 | Transmission..... | 129 |
| 12.1 | Transmission Modes..... | 129 |
| 12.1.1 | GTP-U Transmission Modes..... | 129 |
| 12.1.2 | LLC Transmission Modes (GSM Only)..... | 129 |
| 12.1.3 | RLC Transmission Modes..... | 130 |
| 12.2 | Logical Link Control Functionality (GSM Only) | 130 |
| 12.2.1 | Addressing | 130 |
| 12.2.2 | Services | 130 |
| 12.2.3 | Functions..... | 130 |
| 12.3 | Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Functionality (GSM Only) | 131 |
| 12.3.1 | Services | 131 |
| 12.3.2 | Subfunctions..... | 132 |
| 12.4 | PDCCP (UMTS Only)..... | 132 |
| 12.5 | Octet Stream Protocol Functionality..... | 132 |
| 12.5.1 | PAD Function | 134 |

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 12.5.1.1 | Packet Assembler | 134 |
| 12.5.1.1.1 | Buffer Full | 134 |
| 12.5.1.1.2 | Inactivity Timer Expiry..... | 134 |
| 12.5.1.1.3 | Maximum Buffer Delay Timer Expiry | 134 |
| 12.5.1.1.4 | Special Character | 134 |
| 12.5.1.1.5 | Change in Flow Control State..... | 134 |
| 12.5.1.1.6 | Immediate Forwarding Request..... | 134 |
| 12.5.1.2 | Packet Disassembler..... | 134 |
| 12.5.2 | Quality of Service | 134 |
| 12.6 | Point-to-Point Protocol Functionality | 135 |
| 12.6.1 | User Plane for PDP Type PPP | 135 |
| 12.6.2 | Functions..... | 135 |
| 12.7 | Gb Interface (GSM Only) | 136 |
| 12.7.1 | Physical Layer Protocol | 136 |
| 12.7.2 | Link Layer Protocols..... | 136 |
| 12.7.3 | BSS GPRS Protocol | 136 |
| 12.7.3.1 | Inter-dependency of the BSSGP and LLC Functions..... | 137 |
| 12.7.3.2 | BSSGP Addressing..... | 137 |
| 12.7.3.3 | BVCi Contexts in BSS and in SGSN | 137 |
| 12.7.3.4 | Flow Control Between SGSN and BSS over the Gb Interface..... | 138 |
| 12.7.3.5 | BSS Context | 138 |
| 12.7.3.5.1 | BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure | 138 |
| 12.7.3.5.2 | SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure | 139 |
| 12.7.3.5.3 | BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure | 139 |
| 12.7.3.5.4 | BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures..... | 140 |
| 12.8 | Iu Interface (UMTS Only)..... | 140 |
| 12.8.1 | Physical Layer Protocols..... | 141 |
| 12.8.2 | Higher-Layer Protocols..... | 141 |
| 12.8.2.1 | Higher-Layer Protocols for User Data Transport | 141 |
| 12.8.2.1.1 | Consistent Sequence Numbering of PDUs on Iu and Gn Interfaces | 142 |
| 12.8.2.2 | Higher-Layer Protocols for Signalling Transport..... | 142 |
| 12.8.3 | Iu Release Procedure..... | 142 |
| 12.8.4 | RAB Assignment Procedure | 143 |
| 12.8.5 | Location Reporting Procedure | 143 |
| 12.9 | Abis Interface (GSM Only) | 144 |
| 12.9.1 | Remote Packet Control Unit | 145 |
| 13 | Information Storage | 146 |
| 13.1 | HLR | 146 |
| 13.2 | SGSN | 148 |
| 13.3 | GGSN | 149 |
| 13.4 | MS | 150 |
| 13.5 | MSC/VLR..... | 151 |
| 13.6 | BSS for GPRS | 151 |
| 13.7 | RNC for UMTS | 151 |
| 13.8 | Recovery and Restoration Procedures | 152 |
| 13.8.1 | HLR Failure | 152 |
| 13.8.2 | SGSN Failure | 152 |
| 13.8.3 | GGSN Failure | 153 |
| 13.8.4 | VLR Failure | 153 |
| 13.8.5 | BSS Failure (GSM Only) | 153 |
| 13.8.6 | RNC Failure (UMTS Only) | 153 |
| 14 | Identities | 153 |
| 14.1 | IMSI..... | 153 |
| 14.2 | Packet TMSI..... | 154 |
| 14.3 | NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS..... | 154 |
| 14.4 | NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID for UMTS | 155 |
| 14.5 | PDP Address..... | 155 |
| 14.6 | TEID..... | 156 |
| 14.7 | Routeing Area Identity | 156 |
| 14.8 | UTRAN Registration Area Identity (UMTS Only) | 156 |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 14.9 | Cell Identity | 156 |
| 14.10 | Service Area Identity (UMTS Only)..... | 157 |
| 14.11 | GSN Addresses..... | 157 |
| 14.11.1 | GSN Address..... | 157 |
| 14.11.2 | GSN Number..... | 157 |
| 14.12 | RNC Addresses (UMTS Only)..... | 157 |
| 14.12.1 | RNC Address | 157 |
| 14.12.2 | RNC Number | 157 |
| 14.13 | Access Point Name | 157 |
| 15 | Operational Aspects..... | 158 |
| 15.1 | Charging | 158 |
| 15.1.1 | Charging Information..... | 158 |
| 15.1.2 | Reverse Charging..... | 159 |
| 15.2 | Quality of Service Profile | 159 |
| 15.2.1 | Radio Priority Levels (GSM Only) | 159 |
| 15.3 | Traffic Flow Template | 159 |
| 15.3.1 | Rules for Operations on TFTs..... | 159 |
| 15.3.2 | Packet Filter Attributes | 160 |
| 15.3.2.1 | Source Address and Subnet Mask | 160 |
| 15.3.2.2 | Protocol Number / Next Header | 161 |
| 15.3.2.3 | Port Numbers..... | 161 |
| 15.3.2.4 | IPSec Security Parameter Index | 161 |
| 15.3.2.5 | Type of Service / Traffic Class and Mask | 161 |
| 15.3.2.6 | Flow Label..... | 161 |
| 15.3.3 | Example Usage of Packet Filters | 161 |
| 15.3.3.1 | IPv4 Multi-field Classification | 161 |
| 15.3.3.2 | IPv4 TOS-based Classification..... | 161 |
| 15.3.3.3 | IPv4 Multi-field Classification for IPSec Traffic | 161 |
| 16 | Interactions with Other Services..... | 162 |
| 16.1 | Point-to-point Short Message Service | 162 |
| 16.1.1 | Point-to-point Short Message Service (GSM Only)..... | 162 |
| 16.1.1.1 | Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer..... | 162 |
| 16.1.1.1.1 | Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer | 163 |
| 16.1.1.2 | Mobile-originated SMS Transfer..... | 164 |
| 16.1.2 | Point-to-point Short Message Service (UMTS Only) | 165 |
| 16.2 | Circuit-switched Services (GSM Only) | 165 |
| 16.2.1 | Suspension of GPRS Services..... | 165 |
| 16.2.2 | GPRS and Dedicated Mode Priority Handling..... | 166 |
| 16.3 | Supplementary Services..... | 166 |
| 16.4 | CAMEL Services..... | 166 |
| Annex A (normative): | APN and GGSN Selection..... | 167 |
| A.1 | Definitions | 167 |
| A.2 | Selection Rules | 167 |
| Annex B (normative): | Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service | 174 |
| B.1 | Direction of Connection Setup | 174 |
| B.2 | Bearer..... | 174 |
| B.3 | Setup Data..... | 174 |
| B.3.1 | Protocol Type - TCP or UDP..... | 174 |
| B.3.2 | Host Name | 175 |
| B.3.3 | Port Number | 175 |
| B.3.4 | PAD Parameters | 175 |

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| B.4 | Flow Control | 175 |
| B.5 | Break Signal | 175 |
| B.6 | Connection Establishment Procedure | 175 |
| B.6.1 | Fully User-Specified Establishment | 176 |
| B.6.2 | Default Internet Endpoint Parameters Establishment | 176 |
| B.7 | Connection Termination | 176 |
| B.7.1 | MS-initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination | 176 |
| B.7.2 | MS-initiated UDP IHOSS Connection Termination | 176 |
| B.7.3 | Internet Host Initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination | 177 |
| B.8 | Security | 177 |
| B.8.1 | Authentication of the GPRS User | 177 |
| B.8.2 | Malicious Reconfiguration of the GPRS Device | 177 |
| B.9 | Maintenance | 177 |
| Annex C (normative): | IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration Procedure | 178 |
| Annex D (informative): | Figures | 179 |
| Annex E (informative): | Tables | 182 |
| Annex F (informative): | Change History | 183 |

Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The present document defines the stage-2 service description for a General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) within the digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

- x the first digit:
 - 1 presented to TSG for information;
 - 2 presented to TSG for approval; or
 - 3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control;
- y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.; and
- z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

1 Scope

The present document defines the stage-2 service description for the packet domain, which includes the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) in GSM and UMTS. CCITT I.130 [29] describes a three-stage method for characterisation of telecommunication services, and CCITT Q.65 [31] defines stage 2 of the method.

The present document does not cover the Access Network functionality. GSM 03.64 [11] contains an overall description of the GSM GPRS Access Network. 3G TS 25.301 contains an overall description of the UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.), or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.

- [1] GSM 01.04: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Abbreviations and acronyms".
- [2] GSM 01.61: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); GPRS ciphering algorithm requirements".
- [3] 3G TS 22.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Service description; Stage 1".
- [4] 3G TS 23.003: "Numbering, addressing and identification".
- [5] 3G TS 23.007: "Restoration procedures".
- [5b] 3G TS 23.016: "Subscriber Data Management; Stage 2".
- [6] GSM 03.20: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Security related network functions".
- [7] GSM 03.22: "Functions related to Mobile Station (MS) in idle mode and group receive mode".
- [7b] 3G TS 23.122: "Non Access Stratum functions related to Mobile Station (MS) in idle mode".
- [8] 3G TS 23.040: "Technical realisation of the Short Message Service (SMS); Point-to-Point (PP)".
- [8b] 3G TS 23.078: "Customised Applications for Mobile Network Enhanced Logic (CAMEL) Phase 3 – Stage 2".
- [11] GSM 03.64: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Overall description of the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) Radio interface; Stage 2".
- [12] 3G TS 24.007: "Mobile radio interface signalling layer 3; General aspects".
- [13] 3G TS 24.008: "Mobile radio interface layer 3 specification; Core Network Protocols – Stage 3".
- [14] GSM 04.60: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) - Base Station System (BSS) interface; Radio Link Control / Medium Access Control (RLC/MAC) protocol".
- [15] GSM 04.64: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station – Serving GPRS Support Node (MS - SGSN) Logical Link Control (LLC) layer specification".

- [16] GSM 04.65: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) – Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN); Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP)".
- [16b] GSM 05.08: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Radio subsystem link control".
- [17] 3G TS 27.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) supporting GPRS".
- [18] GSM 08.08: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile Switching Centre - Base Station System (MSC - BSS) interface: Layer 3 specification".
- [19] GSM 08.14: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) interface; Gb interface layer 1".
- [20] GSM 08.16: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) interface; Network Service".
- [21] GSM 08.18: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN); BSS GPRS Protocol (BSSGP)".
- [22] GSM 08.60: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Inband control of remote transcoders and rate adaptors for Enhanced Full Rate (EFR) and full rate traffic channels".
- [23] 3G TS 29.002: "Mobile Application Part (MAP) specification".
- [24] 3G TS 29.016: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) - Visitors Location Register (VLR); Gs interface network service specification".
- [25] 3G TS 29.018: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) - Visitors Location Register (VLR); Gs interface layer 3 specification".
- [26] 3G TS 29.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); GPRS Tunnelling Protocol (GTP) across the Gn and Gp Interface".
- [27] 3G TS 29.061: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Interworking between the Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN) supporting GPRS and Packet Data Networks (PDN)".
- [27b] 3G TS 29.078: "3rd Generation Partnership Project; Customised Applications for Mobile Network Enhanced Logic (CAMEL) Phase 3; CAMEL Application Part (CAP) Specification".
- [28] GSM 11.11: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Specification of the Subscriber Identity Module - Mobile Equipment (SIM - ME) interface".
- [29] CCITT Recommendations I.130: "General modelling methods – Method for the characterisation of telecommunication services supported by an ISDN and network capabilities of an ISDN".
- [30] CCITT Recommendation E.164: "Numbering plan for the ISDN era".
- [31] CCITT Recommendation Q.65: "Methodology – Stage 2 of the method for the characterization of services supported by an ISDN".
- [32] CCITT Recommendation V.42 bis: "Data communication over the telephone network – Data compression procedures for data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) using error correction procedures".
- [33] CCITT Recommendation X.3: "Packet assembly disassembly facility (PAD) in a public data network".
- [34] CCITT Recommendation X.25: "Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) for terminals operating in the packet mode and connected to public data networks by dedicated circuit".

- [39] IETF RFC 768 (1980): "User Datagram Protocol" (STD 6).
- [40] IETF RFC 791 (1981): "Internet Protocol" (STD 5).
- [41] IETF RFC 792 (1981): "Internet Control Message Protocol" (STD 5).
- [42] IETF RFC 793 (1981): "Transmission Control Protocol" (STD 7).
- [43] IETF RFC 1034 (1987): "Domain Names – Concepts and Facilities" (STD 7).
- [44] IETF RFC 1661 (1994): "The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)" (STD 51).
- [45] IETF RFC 1542 (1993): "Clarification and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol".
- [46] IETF RFC 2002 (1996): "IPv4 Mobility Support".
- [47] IETF RFC 2131 (1997): "Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol".
- [49] TIA/EIA-136 (1999): "TDMA Cellular / PCS"; Arlington: Telecommunications Industry Association.
- [50] 3G TS 25.301: "Radio Interface Protocol Architecture".
- [51] 3G TS 25.303: "UE Functions and Interlayer Procedures in Connected Mode".
- [52] 3G TS 25.331: "RRC Protocol Specification".
- [53] 3G TS 25.401: "UTRAN Overall Description".
- [54] 3G TS 23.121: "Architectural Requirements for Release 1999".
- [55] 3G TS 25.322: "RLC Protocol Specification".
- [56] 3G TS 25.412: "UTRAN Iu Interface Signalling Transport".
- [56b] 3G TS 25.413: "UTRAN Iu Interface RANAP Signalling".
- [57] 3G TS 25.323: "Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP) protocol".
- [58] 3G TS 23.107: "Quality of Service, Concept and Architecture".
- [59] ITU-T Recommendation I.361: "B-ISDN ATM Layer Specification".
- [60] 3G TS 25.321: "Medium Access Control (MAC) Protocol Specification".
- [61] 3G TS 33.102: "Security Architecture".
- [62] 3G TS 22.002: "Circuit Bearer Services Supported by a PLMN".
- [63] 3G TS 25.411: "UTRAN Iu interface Layer 1".

- [64] 3G TS 25.414: "UTRAN Iu interface data transport & transport signalling".
- [65] 3G TS 23.171: "Functional stage 2 description of location services in UMTS".
- [66] Void.
- [67] ITU-T Recommendation I.363.5: "B-ISDN ATM Adaptation Layer Specification: Type 5 AAL".
- [68] IETF RFC 2373 (1998): "IP Version 6 Addressing Architecture".
- [69] IETF RFC 2462 (1998): "IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration".
- [70] 3G TS 32.015: "GSM call and event data for the packet switched domain".

3 Definitions, abbreviations and symbols

3.1 Definitions

Definitions can be found in 3G TS 22.060 and 3G TS 25.401. For the purposes of the present document, the additional definitions apply:

GPRS: Packet Services for GSM and UMTS systems.

(GSM only): indicates that this (sub)clause or paragraph applies only to a GSM system. For multi-system cases this is determined by the current serving radio access network.

(UMTS only): indicates that this (sub)clause or paragraph applies only to a UMTS system. For multi-system cases this is determined by the current serving radio access network.

In GSM, ...: indicates that this paragraph applies only to GSM System. For multi-system cases this is determined by the current serving radio access network.

In UMTS, ...: indicates that this paragraph applies only to UMTS System. For multi-system cases this is determined by the current serving radio access network.

inter-system change: change of radio access between different radio access technologies such as GSM and UMTS.

MS: this specification makes no distinction between MS and UE.

2G- / 3G-: prefixes 2G- and 3G- refer to functionality that supports only GSM or UMTS, respectively, e.g., 2G-SGSN refers only to the GSM functionality of an SGSN. When the prefix is omitted, reference is made independently from the GSM or UMTS functionality.

3.2 Abbreviations

Applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04[1]. For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply:

| | |
|--------|----------------------------------------|
| AAL5 | ATM Adaptation Layer type 5 |
| APN | Access Point Name |
| ATM | Asynchronous Transfer Mode |
| AUTN | Authentication Token |
| BG | Border Gateway |
| BSSAP+ | Base Station System Application Part + |
| BSSGP | Base Station System GPRS Protocol |
| BVCI | BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier |
| CCU | Channel Codec Unit |
| CDR | Call Detail Record |
| CGF | Charging Gateway Functionality |
| CGI | Cell Global Identification |
| CK | Cipher Key |

| | |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------|
| CMM | Circuit Mobility Management |
| CS | Circuit Switched |
| DHCP | Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol |
| DNS | Domain Name System |
| EGPRS | Enhanced GPRS |
| ESP | Encapsulating Security Payload |
| GEA | GPRS Encryption Algorithm |
| GGSN | Gateway GPRS Support Node |
| GMM/SM | GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management |
| GPRS-SSF | GPRS Service Switching Function |
| GPRS-CSI | GPRS CAMEL Subscription Information |
| GSM-SCF | GSM Service Control Function |
| GSIM | GSM Service Identity Module |
| GSN | GPRS Support Node |
| GTP | GPRS Tunnelling Protocol |
| GTP-C | GTP Control Plane |
| GTP-U | GTP User Plane |
| ICMP | Internet Control Message Protocol |
| IETF | Internet Engineering Task Force |
| IHOSS | Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service |
| IK | Integrity Key |
| IP | Internet Protocol |
| IPv4 | Internet Protocol version 4 |
| IPv6 | Internet Protocol version 6 |
| IPX | Internet Packet eXchange |
| ISP | Internet Service Provider |
| KSI | Key Set Identifier |
| L2TP | Layer-2 Tunnelling Protocol |
| LL-PDU | LLC PDU |
| LLC | Logical Link Control |
| MAC | Medium Access Control |
| MIP | Mobile IP |
| MNRF | Mobile station Not Reachable Flag |
| MNRG | Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag |
| MNRR | Mobile station Not Reachable Reason |
| MTP2 | Message Transfer Part layer 2 |
| MTP3 | Message Transfer Part layer 3 |
| NGAF | Non-GPRS Alert Flag |
| NS | Network Service |
| NSAPI | Network layer Service Access Point Identifier |
| NSS | Network SubSystem |
| OSP | Octet Stream Protocol |
| P-TMSI | Packet TMSI |
| PCU | Packet Control Unit |
| PDCH | Packet Data CHannel |
| PDCP | Packet Data Convergence Protocol |
| PDN | Packet Data Network |
| PDP | Packet Data Protocol, e.g., IP |
| PDU | Protocol Data Unit |
| PMM | Packet Mobility Management |
| PPF | Paging Proceed Flag |
| PPP | Point-to-Point Protocol |
| PTP | Point To Point |
| PVC | Permanent Virtual Circuit |
| RA | Routeing Area |
| RAB | Radio Access Bearer |
| RAC | Routeing Area Code |
| RAI | Routeing Area Identity |
| RANAP | Radio Access Network Application Protocol |
| RAU | Routeing Area Update |
| RLC | Radio Link Control |
| RNC | Radio Network Controller |

| | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------|
| RNS | Radio Network Subsystem |
| RNTI | Radio Network Temporary Identity |
| RRC | Radio Resource Control |
| SGSN | Serving GPRS Support Node |
| SM | Short Message |
| SM-SC | Short Message service Service Centre |
| SMS-GMSC | Short Message Service Gateway MSC |
| SMS-IWMSC | Short Message Service Interworking MSC |
| SN-PDU | SNDP PDU |
| SNDC | SubNetwork Dependent Convergence |
| SNDP | SubNetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol |
| SPI | Security Parameter Index |
| SRNC | Serving RNC |
| TCAP | Transaction Capabilities Application Part |
| TCP | Transmission Control Protocol |
| TFT | Traffic Flow Template |
| TEID | Tunnel Endpoint Identifier |
| TLLI | Temporary Logical Link Identity |
| TOM | Tunnelling Of Messages |
| TOS | Type of Service |
| TRAU | Transcoder and Rate Adaptor Unit |
| UDP | User Datagram Protocol |
| UEA | UMTS Encryption Algorithm |
| UIA | UMTS Integrity Algorithm |
| URA | UTRAN Registration Area |
| USIM | User Service Identity Module |
| UTRAN | UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network |

3.3 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document the following symbols apply:

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ga | Charging data collection interface between a CDR transmitting unit (e.g., an SGSN or a GGSN) and a CDR receiving functionality (a CGF). |
| Gb | Interface between an SGSN and a BSS. |
| Gc | Interface between a GGSN and an HLR. |
| Gd | Interface between a SMS-GMSC and an SGSN, and between a SMS-IWMSC and an SGSN. |
| Gf | Interface between an SGSN and an EIR. |
| Gi | Reference point between GPRS and an external packet data network. |
| Gn | Interface between two GSNs within the same PLMN. |
| Gp | Interface between two GSNs in different PLMNs. The Gp interface allows support of GPRS network services across areas served by the co-operating GPRS PLMNs. |
| Gr | Interface between an SGSN and an HLR. |
| Gs | Interface between an SGSN and an MSC/VLR. |
| Iu | Interface between the RNS and the core network. It is also considered as a reference point. |
| kbit/s | Kilobits per second. |
| Mbit/s | Megabits per second. 1 Mbit/s = 1 million bits per second. |
| R | Reference point between a non-ISDN compatible TE and MT. Typically this reference point supports a standard serial interface. |
| Reporting Area | The service area for which an MS's location shall be reported. |
| Service Area | The location accuracy level needed for service management purposes in the 3G-SGSN, e.g., a routeing area or a cell. The 3G-SGSN can request the SRNC to report: i) the MS's current service area; ii) when the MS moves into a given service area; or iii) when the MS moves out of a given service area. |
| Um | Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the GSM fixed network part. The Um interface is the GSM network interface for providing GPRS services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the GPRS services in GSM through this interface. |
| Uu | Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the UMTS fixed network part. The Uu interface is the UMTS network interface for providing GPRS services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the GPRS services in UMTS through this interface. |

4 Main Concepts

The packet domain uses a packet-mode technique to transfer high-speed and low-speed data and signalling in an efficient manner. The packet domain optimises the use of network and radio resources. Strict separation between the radio subsystem and network subsystem is maintained, allowing the network subsystem to be reused with other radio access technologies.

A common packet domain Core Network is used for both GSM and UMTS. This common Core Network provides packet-switched (PS) services and is designed to support several quality of services levels in order to allow efficient transfer of non real-time traffic (e.g., intermittent and bursty data transfers, occasional transmission of large volumes of data) and real-time traffic (e.g., voice, video). Applications based on standard data protocols and SMS are supported, and interworking is defined with IP networks. Charging should be flexible and allow to bill according to the amount of data transferred, the QoS supported, and the duration of the connection.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) keeps track of the individual MSs' location and performs security functions and access control. The SGSN is connected to the GSM base station system through the Gb interface and/or to the UMTS Radio Access Network through the Iu interface. The SGSN also interfaces via the GPRS Service Switching Function with the GSM Service Control Function for optional CAMEL session and cost control service support.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) provides interworking with external packet-switched networks, and is connected with SGSNs via an IP-based packet domain PLMN backbone network.

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) collects charging records from SGSNs and GGSNs.

The HLR contains GSM and UMTS subscriber information.

The SMS-GMSCs and SMS-IWMSCs support SMS transmission via the SGSN.

Optionally, the MSC/VLR can be enhanced for more-efficient co-ordination of packet-switched and circuit-switched services and functionality: e.g., combined GPRS and non-GPRS location updates.

In order to access the PS services, an MS shall first make its presence known to the network by performing a GPRS attach. This makes the MS available for SMS over PS, paging via the SGSN, and notification of incoming PS data.

In order to send and receive PS data, the MS shall activate the Packet Data Protocol context that it wants to use. This operation makes the MS known in the corresponding GGSN, and interworking with external data networks can commence.

User data is transferred transparently between the MS and the external data networks with a method known as encapsulation and tunnelling: data packets are equipped with PS-specific protocol information and transferred between the MS and the GGSN. This transparent transfer method lessens the requirement for the PLMN to interpret external data protocols, and it enables easy introduction of additional interworking protocols in the future.

4.1 Main GSM Concepts

For GPRS, specific GSM radio channels are defined, and the allocation of these channels is flexible: from 1 to 8 radio interface timeslots can be allocated per TDMA frame, timeslots are shared by the active users, and up and downlink are allocated separately. The radio interface resources can be shared dynamically between speech and data services as a function of service load and operator preference. Various radio channel coding schemes are specified to allow bitrates from 9 to more than 150 kbit/s per user. EGPRS is an enhancement of GSM allowing higher bitrates on the radio interface. The higher bitrates are achieved by using a new modulation and new coding schemes in the MS and the BSS.

Three GSM MS modes of operation are supported: An MS in class-A mode of operation operates GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously. An MS in class-B mode of operation monitors control channels for GSM GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously, but can only operate one set of services at one time. An MS in class-C mode of operation exclusively operates GSM services.

User data can be compressed and protected with retransmission protocols for efficiency and reliability.

In GSM, GPRS security functionality is equivalent to the existing GSM security. The SGSN performs authentication and cipher setting procedures based on the same algorithms, keys, and criteria as in existing GSM. GPRS uses a ciphering algorithm optimised for packet data transmission. A GPRS ME can access the GPRS services with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware, and with GPRS-aware SIMs.

Cell selection may be performed autonomously by an MS, or the base station system instructs the MS to select a certain cell. The MS informs the network when it re-selects another cell or group of cells known as a routing area.

4.2 Main UMTS Concepts

In UMTS, radio resources are allocated to MSs in a very flexible manner. Depending on the level of activity, MSs are allocated shared contention-based radio resources or dedicated radio resources for user packet transmission.

Three UMTS MS modes of operation are supported in UMTS: The PS/CS mode of operation corresponds to class-A mode operation in GSM. The PS mode of operation corresponds to class-C mode operation in GSM. The CS mode of operation is the outside the scope of this specification.

UMTS security functionality is equivalent to or of higher functionality than the existing GSM security. UMTS may use a security algorithm different from GSM. The 3G-SGSN performs the authentication procedure, and the RNC performs the ciphering procedure based on the algorithm for UMTS.

In UMTS, different levels of mobility procedures are executed depending upon the MS state. When an MS has an active RRC connection to UTRAN, the MS performs either UTRAN Registration Area updating procedures or handover or cell update procedures depending on the level that UTRAN is tracking the MS position. When an MS does not have an active RRC connection (i.e., it is in idle mode), the MS performs RA updating procedures. In all the procedures, the cell selection is controlled by the network by setting cell selection parameters and/or restriction information.

5 General Packet Domain Architecture and Transmission Mechanism

5.1 Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

Each PLMN has two access points, the radio interface (labelled Um in GSM and Uu in UMTS) used for mobile access and the R reference point used for origination or reception of messages. The R reference point for the MSs is defined in 3G TS 27.060 [17].

An interface differs from a reference point in that an interface is defined where specific information is exchanged and needs to be fully recognised.

There is an inter PLMN interface called Gp that connects two independent packet domain networks for message exchange.

There is also a PLMN to fixed network (typically a packet data network) reference point called Gi. Gi is defined in 3G TS 29.061 [27].

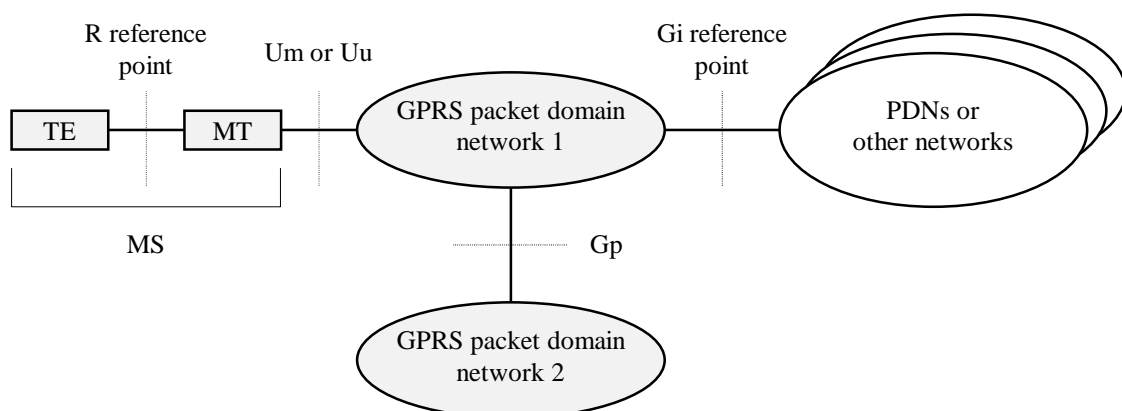


Figure 1: Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

There may be more than a single network interface to several different packet data (or other) networks. These networks may both differ in ownership as well as in communications protocol (e.g., TCP/IP etc.). The network operator should define and negotiate interconnect with each external (PDN or other) network.

5.2 Network Interworking

Network interworking is required whenever a packet domain PLMN and any other network are involved in the execution of a service request. With reference to figure 1, interworking takes place through the Gi reference point and the Gp interface.

The internal mechanism for conveying the PDP PDU through the PLMN is managed by the PLMN network operator and is not apparent to the data user. The use of the packet domain data service may have an impact on and increase the transfer time normally found for a message when communicated through a fixed packet data network.

5.2.1 Internet (IP) Interworking

The packet domain shall support interworking with networks based on the internet protocol (IP). IP is defined in RFC 791 [40]. The packet domain may provide compression of the TCP/IP header when an IP datagram is used within the context of a TCP connection.

The packet domain PLMN service is an IP domain, and mobile terminals offered service by a service provider may be globally addressable through the network operator's addressing scheme.

5.3 High-Level Functions

The following list gives the logical functions performed within the packet domain network. Several functional groupings (meta functions) are defined which each encompasses a number of individual functions:

- Network Access Control Functions.
- Packet Routing and Transfer Functions.
- Mobility Management Functions.
- Logical Link Management Functions (GSM only).
- Radio Resource Management Functions.
- Network Management Functions.

5.3.1 Network Access Control Functions

Network access is the means by which a user is connected to a telecommunication network in order to use the services and/or facilities of that network. An access protocol is a defined set of procedures that enables the user to employ the services and/or facilities of the network.

User network access may occur from either the mobile side or the fixed side of the network. The fixed network interface may support multiple access protocols to external data networks, for example IP. The set of access protocols to be supported is determined by the PLMN operator.

Individual PLMN administrations may require specific access-control procedures in order to limit the set of users permitted to access the network, or to restrict the capabilities of individual users, for example by limiting the type of service available to an individual subscriber. Such access control procedures are beyond the scope of the specifications.

5.3.1.1 Registration Function

Registration is the means by which a user's Mobile Id is associated with the user's packet data protocol(s) and address(es) within the PLMN, and with the user's access point(s) to the external PDP network. The association can be static, i.e., stored in an HLR, or dynamic, i.e., allocated on a per need basis.

5.3.1.2 Authentication and Authorisation Function

This function performs the identification and authentication of the service requester, and the validation of the service request type to ensure that the user is authorised to use the particular network services. The authentication function is performed in association with the Mobility Management functions.

5.3.1.3 Admission Control Function

The purpose of admission control is to calculate which network resources are required to provide the quality of service (QoS) requested, determine if those resources are available, and then reserve those resources. Admission control is performed in association with the Radio Resource Management functions in order to estimate the radio resource requirements within each cell.

5.3.1.4 Message Screening Function

A screening function concerned with filtering out unauthorised or unsolicited messages is required. This should be supported through packet filtering functions. All types of message screening are left to the operators' control, e.g., by use of Internet firewalls.

5.3.1.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

This function adapts data packets received / transmitted from / to terminal equipment to a form suitable for transmission across the packet domain network.

5.3.1.6 Charging Data Collection Function

This function collects data necessary to support subscription and/or traffic fees.

5.3.2 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions

A route is an ordered list of nodes used for the transfer of messages within and between the PLMN(s). Each route consists of the originating node, zero or more relay nodes and the destination node. Routeing is the process of determining and using, in accordance with a set of rules, the route for transmission of a message within and between the PLMN(s).

5.3.2.1 Relay Function

The relay function is the means by which a node forwards data received from one node to the next node in the route.

5.3.2.2 Routeing Function

The routeing function determines the network node to which a message should be forwarded and the underlying service(s) used to reach that GPRS Support Node (GSN), using the destination address of the message. The routeing function selects the transmission path for the "next hop" in the route.

Data transmission between GSNS may occur across external data networks that provide their own internal routeing functions, for example X.25 [34], Frame Relay or ATM networks.

5.3.2.3 Address Translation and Mapping Function

Address translation is the conversion of one address to another address of a different type. Address translation may be used to convert an external network protocol address into an internal network address that can be used for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s).

Address mapping is used to map a network address to another network address of the same type for the routeing and relaying of messages within and between the PLMN(s), for example to forward packets from one network node to another.

5.3.2.4 Encapsulation Function

Encapsulation is the addition of address and control information to a data unit for routing packets within and between the PLMN(s). Decapsulation is the removal of the addressing and control information from a packet to reveal the original data unit.

Encapsulation and decapsulation are performed between the support nodes of the packet domain PLMN(s), and between the serving support node and the MS.

5.3.2.5 Tunnelling Function

Tunnelling is the transfer of encapsulated data units within and between the PLMN(s) from the point of encapsulation to the point of decapsulation. A tunnel is a two-way point-to-point path. Only the tunnel endpoints are identified.

5.3.2.6 Compression Function

The compression function optimises use of radio path capacity by transmitting as little of the SDU (i.e., the exterior PDP PDU) as possible while at the same time as preserving the information contained within it. Only IP header compression is supported in UMTS.

5.3.2.7 Ciphering Function

The ciphering function preserves the confidentiality of user data and signalling across the radio channels and inherently protects the PLMN from intruders.

5.3.2.8 Domain Name Server Function

The Domain Name Server function resolves logical GSN names to GSN addresses. This function is standard Internet functionality according to RFC 1034 [43], which allows to resolve any name for GSNs and other nodes within the packet domain PLMN backbone networks.

5.3.3 Mobility Management Functions

The mobility management functions are used to keep track of the current location of an MS within the PLMN or within another PLMN.

5.3.4 Logical Link Management Functions (GSM Only)

Logical link management functions are concerned with the maintenance of a communication channel between an individual MS and the PLMN across the radio interface. These functions involve the co-ordination of link state information between the MS and the PLMN as well as the supervision of data transfer activity over the logical link.

Refer to GSM 04.64 [15] for further information.

5.3.4.1 Logical Link Establishment Function

Logical link establishment is performed when the MS attaches to the PS services.

5.3.4.2 Logical Link Maintenance Functions

Logical link maintenance functions supervise the logical link status and control link state changes.

5.3.4.3 Logical Link Release Function

The logical link release function is used to de-allocate resources associated with the logical link connection.

security for the MS. At PDP Context Activation, the SGSN establishes a PDP context, to be used for routing purposes, with the GGSN that the subscriber will be using.

The SGSN and GGSN functionalities may be combined in the same physical node, or they may reside in different physical nodes. SGSN and GGSN contain IP or other (operator's selection, e.g., ATM-SVC) routing functionality, and they may be interconnected with IP routers. In UMTS, the SGSN and RNC may be interconnected with one or more IP routers. When SGSN and GGSN are in different PLMNs, they are interconnected via the Gp interface. The Gp interface provides the functionality of the Gn interface, plus security functionality required for inter-PLMN communication. The security functionality is based on mutual agreements between operators.

The SGSN may send location information to the MSC/VLR via the optional Gs interface. The SGSN may receive paging requests from the MSC/VLR via the Gs interface.

The SGSN interfaces with the GSM-SCF for optional CAMEL control. Depending on the result from the CAMEL interaction, the session and packet data transfer may proceed normally. Otherwise, interaction with the GSM-SCF continues as described in 3G TS 23.078 [8b]. Only the GSM-SCF interworking points are indicated in the signalling procedures in this specification.

5.4.2 Packet Domain PLMN Backbone Networks

There are two kinds of backbone networks. These are called:

- intra-PLMN backbone network; and
- inter-PLMN backbone network.

The intra-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs within the same PLMN.

The inter-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs and intra-PLMN backbone networks in different PLMNs.

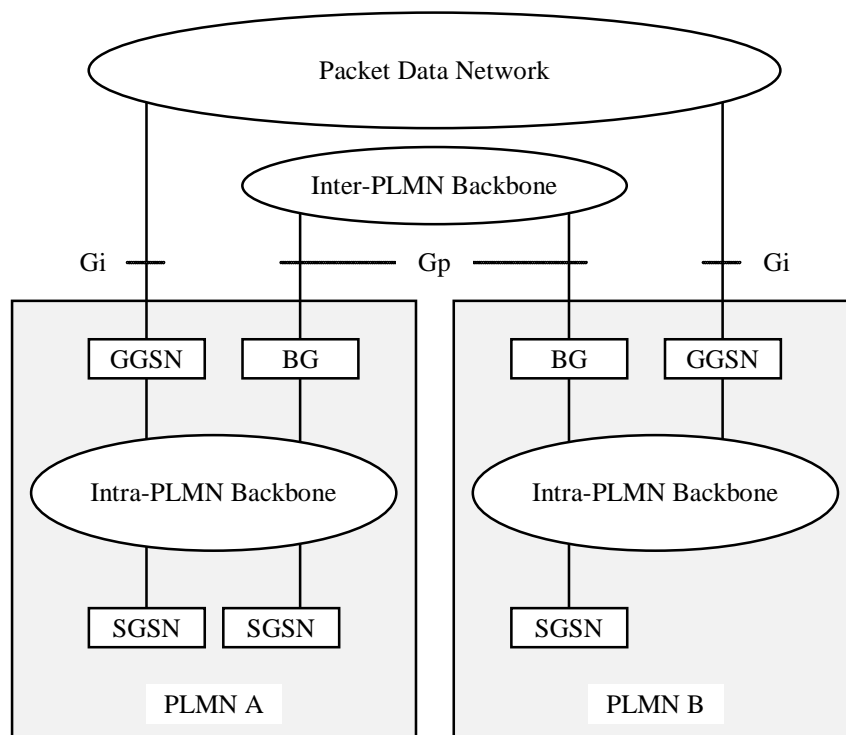


Figure 3: Intra- and Inter-PLMN Backbone Networks

Every intra-PLMN backbone network is a private IP network intended for packet domain data and signalling only. A private IP network is an IP network to which some access control mechanism is applied in order to achieve a required level of security. Two intra-PLMN backbone networks are connected via the Gp interface using Border Gateways (BGs) and an inter-PLMN backbone network. The inter-PLMN backbone network is selected by a roaming agreement

that includes the BG security functionality. The BG is not defined within the scope of the packet domain. The inter-PLMN backbone can be a Packet Data Network, e.g., the public Internet or a leased line.

5.4.3 HLR

The HLR contains packet domain subscription data and routing information. The HLR is accessible from the SGSN via the Gr interface and from the GGSN via the Gc interface. For roaming MSs, HLR may be in a different PLMN than the current SGSN.

5.4.4 SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC

The SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC are connected to the SGSN via the Gd interface to enable the SGSN to support SMS.

5.4.5 Mobile Stations (GSM Only)

A GSM GPRS MS can operate in one of three modes of operation. The mode of operation depends on the services that the MS is attached to, i.e., only GPRS or both GPRS and other GSM services, and upon the MS's capabilities to operate GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously.

- Class-A mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, and the MS supports simultaneous operation of GPRS and other GSM services.
- Class-B mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, but the MS can only operate one set of services at a time.
- Class-C mode of operation: The MS is exclusively attached to GPRS services.

The three modes of operation are defined in 3G TS 22.060.

NOTE: Other GSM technical specifications may refer to the MS modes of operation as GPRS class-A MS, GPRS class-B MS, and GPRS class-C MS.

5.4.6 Mobile Stations (UMTS Only)

A UMTS mobile station can operate in one of three modes of operation. However, these operation modes are different from the ones in GSM GPRS due to the capabilities of UTRAN to multiplex CS and PS connections, due to paging coordination for PS services and CS services that are offered by the CN or the UTRAN, etc. The different UMTS mobile station operation modes are defined as follows:

- PS/CS mode of operation: The MS is attached to both the PS domain and CS domain, and the MS is capable of simultaneously operating PS services and CS services. This mode of operation is equivalent to the GSM GPRS class-A mode of operation.
- PS mode of operation: The MS is attached to the PS domain only and may only operate services of the PS domain. However, this does not prevent CS-like services to be offered over the PS domain (e.g., VoIP). This mode of operation is equivalent to the GSM GPRS class-C mode of operation.
- CS mode of operation: The MS is attached to the CS domain only and may only operate services of the CS domain. However, this does not prevent PS-like service to be offered over the CS domain. The CS mode of operation is outside the scope of this specification.

All combinations of different operation modes as described for GSM and UMTS MSs shall be allowed for GSM and UMTS multisystem terminals.

5.4.7 Charging Gateway Functionality

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) is described in GSM 32.015 [70].

5.5 Assignment of Functions to General Logical Architecture

The functions identified in the functional model are assigned to the logical architecture.

Table 1: Mapping of Functions to Logical Architecture

| Function | 2G-MS | 3G-MS | BSS | UTRAN | 2G-SGSN | 3G-SGSN | GGSN | HLR |
|---------------------------------------|-------|-------|-----|-------|---------|---------|------|-----|
| Network Access Control: | | | | | | | | |
| Registration | | | | | | | | X |
| Authentication and Authorisation | X | X | | | X | X | | X |
| Admission Control | X | X | X | X | X | X | | |
| Message Screening | | | | | | | X | |
| Packet Terminal Adaptation | X | X | | | | | | |
| Charging Data Collection | | | | | X | X | X | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Packet Routing & Transfer: | | | | | | | | |
| Relay | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | |
| Routing | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | |
| Address Translation and Mapping | X | X | | X | X | X | X | |
| Encapsulation | X | X | | X | X | X | X | |
| Tunnelling | | | | X | X | X | X | |
| Compression | X | X | | X | X | | | |
| Ciphering | X | X | | X | X | | | X |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Mobility Management: | X | X | | | X | X | X | X |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Logical Link Management: | | | | | | | | |
| Logical Link Establishment | X | | | | X | | | |
| Logical Link Maintenance | X | | | | X | | | |
| Logical Link Release | X | | | | X | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Radio Resource Management: | X | X | X | X | X | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

5.6 User and Control Planes

5.6.1 User Plane (GSM Only)

5.6.1.1 MS – GGSN

The user plane consists of a layered protocol structure providing user information transfer, along with associated information transfer control procedures (e.g., flow control, error detection, error correction and error recovery). The user plane independence of the Network Subsystem (NSS) platform from the underlying radio interface is preserved via the Gb interface. The following user plane is used in GSM:

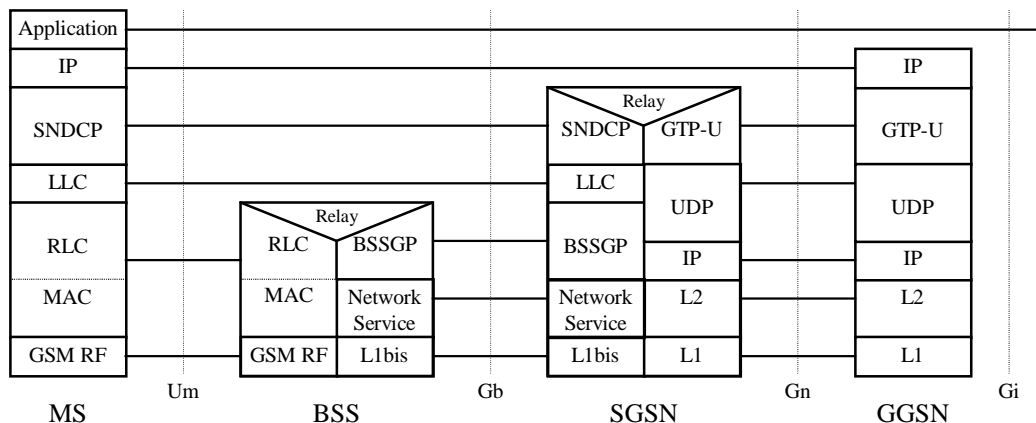


Figure 4: User Plane for GSM

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between GPRS Support Nodes in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by the GPRS Tunnelling Protocol. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060 [26].
- UDP carries GTP PDUs for protocols that do not need a reliable data link (e.g., IP), and provides protection against corrupted GTP PDUs. UDP is defined in RFC 768 [39].
- IP: This is the backbone network protocol used for routing user data and control signalling. The backbone network may initially be based on the IP version 4 protocol. Ultimately, IP version 6 shall be used. IP version 4 is defined in RFC 791.
- Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP): This transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. SNDCP is specified in GSM 04.65 [16].
- Logical Link Control (LLC): This layer provides a highly reliable ciphered logical link. LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols in order to allow introduction of alternative GPRS radio solutions with minimum changes to the NSS. LLC is specified in GSM 04.64.
- Relay: In the BSS, this function relays LLC PDUs between the Um and Gb interfaces. In the SGSN, this function relays PDP PDUs between the Gb and Gn interfaces.
- Base Station System GPRS Protocol (BSSGP): This layer conveys routing- and QoS-related information between BSS and SGSN. BSSGP does not perform error correction. BSSGP is specified in GSM 08.18 [21].
- Network Service (NS): This layer transports BSSGP PDUs. NS is based on the Frame Relay connection between BSS and SGSN, and may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. NS is specified in GSM 08.16 [20].
- RLC/MAC: This layer contains two functions: The Radio Link Control function provides a radio-solution-dependent reliable link. The Medium Access Control function controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel, and the mapping of LLC frames onto the GSM physical channel. RLC/MAC is defined in GSM 04.60 [14].

- GSM RF: As defined in GSM 05 series.

5.6.1.2 GSN – GSN

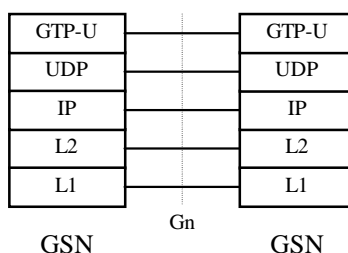


Figure 5: User Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers user data between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.2 User Plane (UMTS Only)

5.6.2.1 MS – GGSN

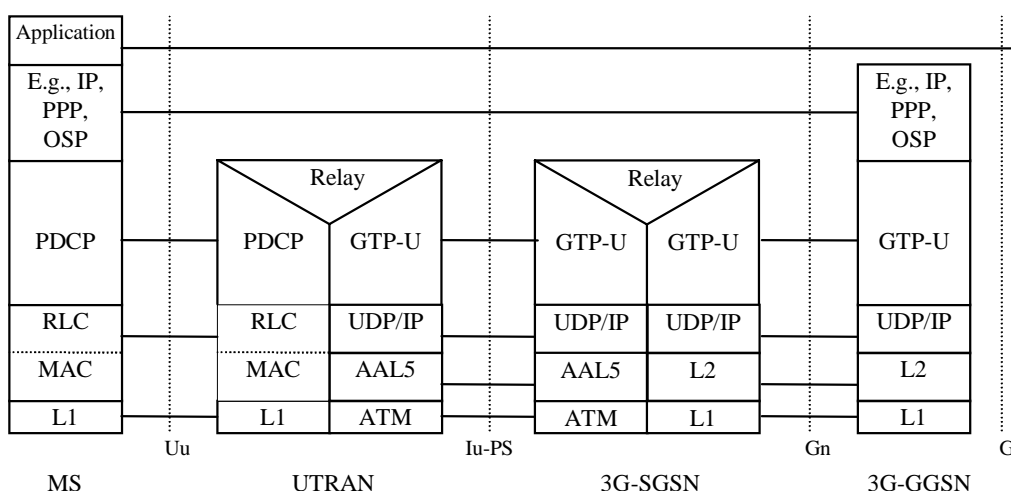


Figure 6: User Plane for UMTS

Legend:

- Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP): This transmission functionality maps higher-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol transparency for higher-layer protocols. PDCP supports e.g., IPv4, PPP, OSP, and IPv6. Introduction of new higher-layer protocols shall be possible without any changes to the radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is specified in 3G TS 25.323.

NOTE: Unlike in GSM, user data compression is not supported in UMTS, because the data compression efficiency depends on the type of user data, and because many applications compress data before transmission. It is difficult to check the type of data in the PDCP layer, and compressing all user data requires too much processing.

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between UTRAN and the 3G-SGSN, and between the GSNs in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by GTP. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060.

- UDP/IP: These are the backbone network protocols used for routing user data and control signalling.
- Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM): The information to be transmitted is divided into fixed-size cells (53 octets), multiplexed, and transmitted. ATM is specified in I.361 [59].
- ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5): This adaptation layer protocol provides support for variable-bitrate connection-oriented or connectionless data services. AAL5 is specified in I.363.5 [67].
- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol provides logical link control over the radio interface. There may be several simultaneous RLC links per MS. Each link is identified by a Bearer Id. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.
- Medium Access Control (MAC): The MAC protocol controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel. MAC is specified in 3G TS 25.321.

5.6.2.2 GSN – GSN

This user plane is the same as for GSM, see subclause "GSN – GSN" above.

5.6.3 Control Plane

The control plane consists of protocols for control and support of the user plane functions:

- controlling the packet domain network access connections, such as attaching to and detaching from the packet domain network;
- controlling the attributes of an established network access connection, such as activation of a PDP address;
- controlling the routing path of an established network connection in order to support user mobility; and
- controlling the assignment of network resources to meet changing user demands.

The following control planes are used in both GSM and UMTS unless specifically indicated:

5.6.3.1 MS – SGSN (GSM Only)

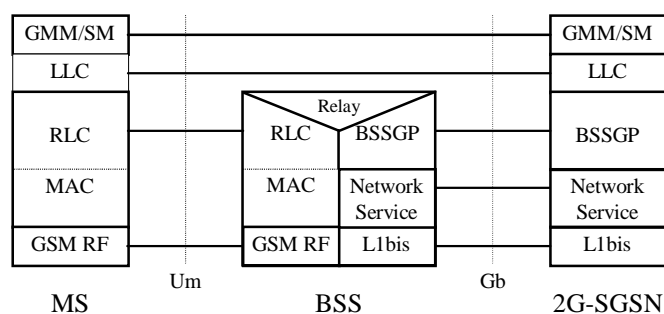


Figure 7: Control Plane MS - 2G-SGSN

Legend:

- GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): This protocol supports mobility management functionality such as GPRS attach, GPRS detach, security, routing area update, location update, PDP context activation, and PDP context deactivation, as described in clauses "Mobility Management Functionality" and "PDP Context Activation, Modification, Deactivation, and Preservation Functions".

5.6.3.2 MS – SGSN (UMTS Only)

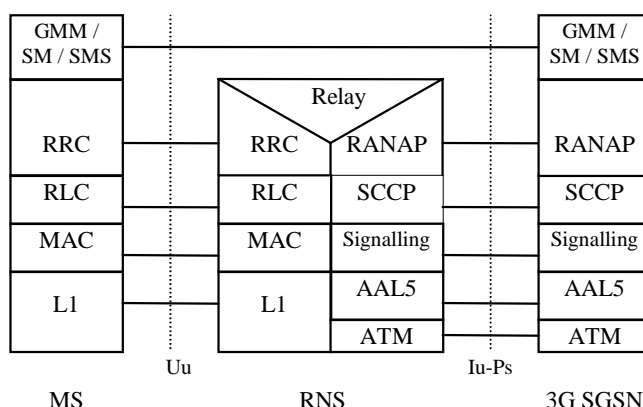


Figure 8: Control Plane MS - 3G-SGSN

Legend:

- UMTS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): GMM supports mobility management functionality such as attach, detach, security, and routing area update, as described in clause "Mobility Management Functionality". SM supports PDP context activation and PDP context deactivation, as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, Deactivation, and Preservation Functions".
- SMS supports the mobile-originated and mobile-terminated short message service described in 3G TS 23.040.
- Radio Access Network Application Protocol (RANAP): This protocol encapsulates and carries higher-layer signalling, handles signalling between the 3G-SGSN and UTRAN, and manages the GTP connections on the Iu interface. RANAP is specified in 3G TS 25.413. The layers below RANAP are defined in 3G TS 23.121.
- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol offers logical link control over the radio interface for the transmission of higher layer-signalling messages and SMS. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.

5.6.3.3 SGSN - HLR

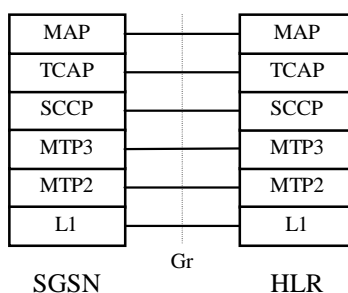


Figure 9: Control Plane SGSN - HLR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as defined in 3G TS 29.002 [23], with enhancements for GPRS as described in the present document.
- TCAP, SCCP, MTP3, and MTP2 are the same protocols as used to support MAP in CS PLMNs.

5.6.3.4 SGSN - MSC/VLR

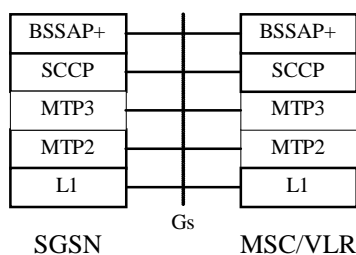


Figure 10: Control Plane SGSN - MSC/VLR

Legend:

- Base Station System Application Part + (BSSAP+): A subset of BSSAP procedures supports signalling between the SGSN and MSC/VLR, as described in clause "Mobility Management Functionality" and in 3G TS 29.018 [25]. The requirements for the lower layers are specified in 3G TS 29.016 [24].

5.6.3.5 SGSN - EIR

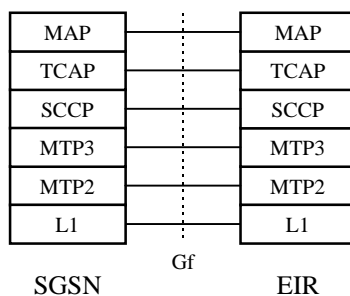


Figure 11: Control Plane SGSN - EIR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and the EIR, as described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

5.6.3.6 SGSN - SMS-GMSC or SMS-IW MSC

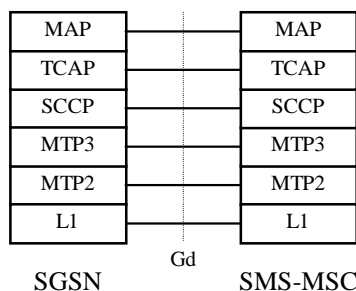


Figure 12: Control Plane SGSN - SMS-GMSC and SGSN - SMS-IW MSC

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and SMS-GMSC or SMS-IW MSC, as described in subclause "Point-to-point Short Message Service".

5.6.3.7 GSN - GSN

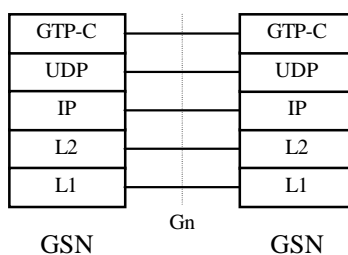


Figure 13: Control Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers signalling messages between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.3.8 GGSN - HLR

This optional signalling path allows a GGSN to exchange signalling information with an HLR. There are two alternative ways to implement this signalling path:

- If a SS7 interface is installed in the GGSN, the MAP protocol can be used between the GGSN and an HLR.
- If a SS7 interface is not installed in the GGSN, any GSN with a SS7 interface installed in the same PLMN as the GGSN can be used as a GTP-to-MAP protocol converter to allow signalling between the GGSN and an HLR.

5.6.3.8.1 MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

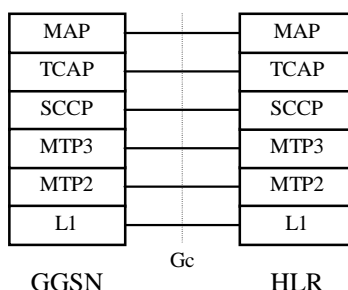


Figure 14: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using MAP

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as described in subclause "Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure".

5.6.3.8.2 GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

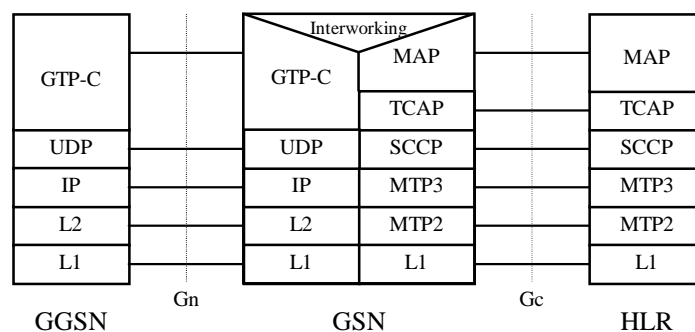


Figure 15: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using GTP and MAP

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between the GGSN and the protocol-converting GSN in the backbone network.
- Interworking: This function provides interworking between GTP and MAP for GGSN - HLR signalling.

5.7 Functionality Needed for Mobile IP Using IPv4

To support the optional Mobile IP services, see 3G TS 23.121 [54], efficiently in the packet domain, Foreign Agent (FA) functionality needs to be provided in the GGSN. The interface between the GGSN and FA, including the mapping between the care of IP address and the GTP tunnel in the PLMN is assumed not be standardized as the GGSN and FA are considered to be one integrated node.

Mobile IP services need a Home Agent (HA). The HA is a router that tunnels datagrams to an FA. The FA de-tunnels the datagrams and sends them towards the MS that is in a PLMN. The HA maintains current location information for each of the departed users. The location of the HA is outside the scope of the 3GPP specifications.

The FA and HA functionality is specified in RFC 2002 [46].

6 Mobility Management Functionality

6.1 Definition of Mobility Management States

The Mobility Management (MM) activities related to a subscriber are characterised by one of three different MM states. In GSM, the MM states for a GPRS subscriber are IDLE, STANDBY, and READY. In UMTS, the MM states for a GPRS subscriber are PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED. Each state describes a certain level of functionality and information allocated. The information sets held at the MS and the SGSN are denoted MM context.

The MM state relates only to GPRS MM activities of a subscriber. The MM state is independent of the number and state of PDP contexts for that subscriber.

6.1.1 Mobility Management States (GSM Only)

6.1.1.1 IDLE (GPRS) State

In GPRS IDLE state, the subscriber is not attached to the GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN contexts hold no valid location or routing information for the subscriber. The subscriber-related mobility management procedures are not performed.

PLMN selection and GSM cell selection and re-selection processes are performed by the MS.

Data transmission to and from the mobile subscriber as well as the paging of the subscriber are not possible. The GPRS MS is seen as not reachable in this case.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the GPRS Attach procedure.

6.1.1.2 STANDBY State

In STANDBY state, the subscriber is attached to GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts as described in clause "Information Storage".

Pages for data or signalling information transfers may be received. It is also possible to receive pages for the CS services via the SGSN. Data reception and transmission are not possible in this state.

The MS performs GPRS Routeing Area (RA) and GPRS cell selection and re-selection locally. The MS executes mobility management procedures to inform the SGSN when it has entered a new RA. The MS does not inform the SGSN on a change of cell in the same RA. Therefore, the location information in the SGSN MM context contains only the GPRS RAI for MSs in STANDBY state.

The MS may initiate activation or deactivation of PDP contexts while in STANDBY state. A PDP context shall be activated before data can be transmitted or received for this PDP context.

The SGSN may have to send data or signalling information to an MS in STANDBY state. The SGSN then sends a Paging Request in the routeing area where the MS is located if PPF is set. If PPF is cleared, then paging is not done. The MM state in the MS is changed to READY when the MS responds to the page, and in the SGSN when the page response is received. Also, the MM state in the MS is changed to READY when data or signalling information is sent from the MS and, accordingly, the MM state in the SGSN is changed to READY when data or signalling information is received from the MS.

The MS or the network may initiate the GPRS Detach procedure to move to the IDLE state. After expiry of the mobile reachable timer the SGSN may perform an implicit detach in order to return the MM contexts in the SGSN to IDLE state. The MM and PDP contexts may then be deleted.

6.1.1.3 READY State

In READY state, the SGSN MM context corresponds to the STANDBY MM context extended by location information for the subscriber on cell level. The MS performs mobility management procedures to provide the network with the actual selected cell. GPRS cell selection and re-selection is done locally by the MS, or may optionally be controlled by the network.

An identifier of the cell, the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC, is included in the BSSGP header of the data packet from the MS, see GSM 08.18.

The MS may send and receive PDP PDUs in this state. The network initiates no GPRS pages for an MS in READY state, pages for other services may be done via the SGSN. The SGSN transfers downlink data to the BSS responsible for the subscriber's actual GPRS cell.

The MS may activate or deactivate PDP contexts while in READY state.

Regardless if a radio resource is allocated to the subscriber or not, the MM context remains in the READY state even when there is no data being communicated. The READY state is supervised by a timer. An MM context moves from READY state to STANDBY state when the READY timer expires. In order to move from READY state to IDLE state, the MS initiates the GPRS Detach procedure.

6.1.1.4 State Transitions and Functions

The movement from one state to the next is dependent on the current state (IDLE, STANDBY, or READY) and the event occurred (e.g., GPRS attach).

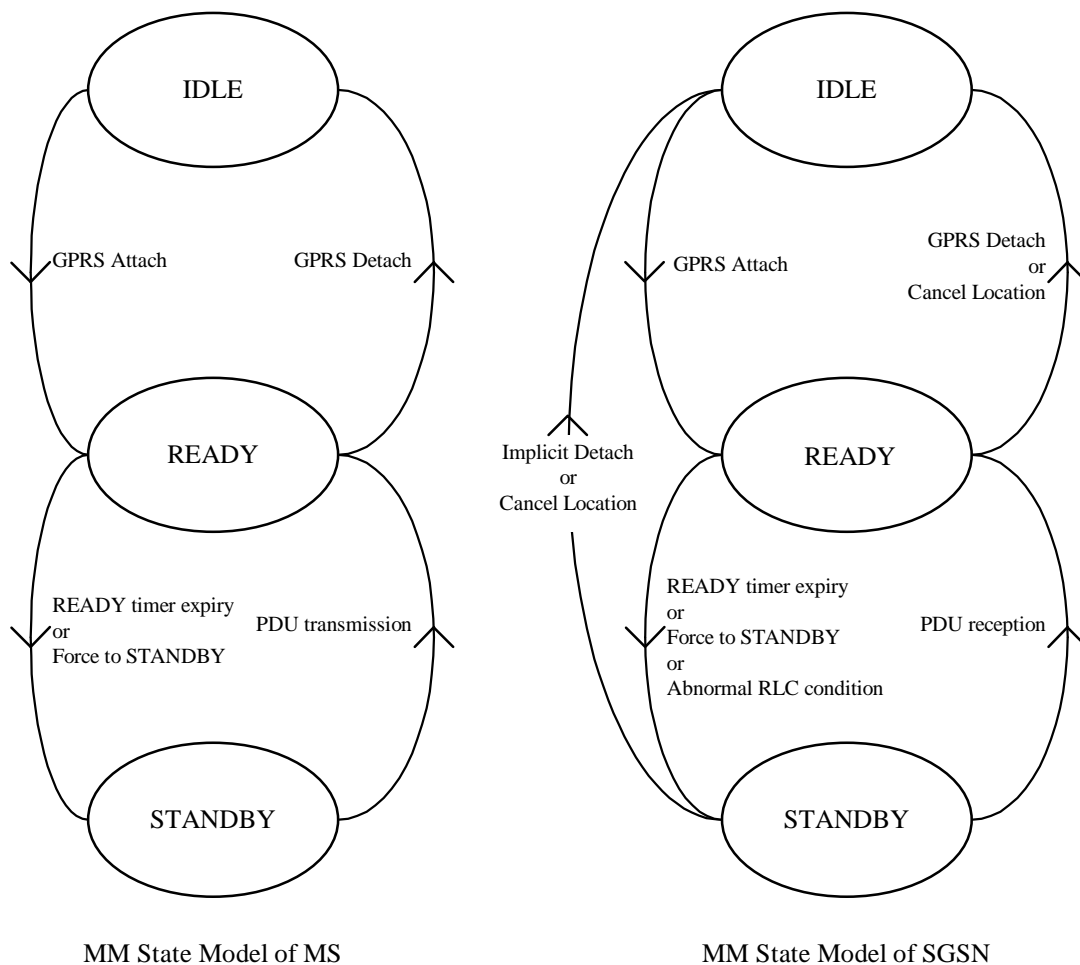


Figure 16: Functional Mobility Management State Model

Figure 16 describes the following state transitions:

Moving from IDLE to READY:

- GPRS Attach: The MS requests access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN.

Moving from STANDBY to IDLE:

- Implicit Detach: The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN shall return to IDLE and INACTIVE state. The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN may be deleted. The GGSN PDP contexts shall be deleted.
- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

Moving from STANDBY to READY:

- PDU transmission: The MS sends an LLC PDU to the SGSN, possibly in response to a page.
- PDU reception: The SGSN receives an LLC PDU from the MS.

Moving from READY to STANDBY:

- READY timer expiry: The MS and the SGSN MM contexts return to STANDBY state.

- Force to STANDBY: The SGSN indicates an immediate return to STANDBY state before the READY timer expires.
- Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context returns to STANDBY state in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.

Moving from READY to IDLE:

- GPRS Detach: The MS or the network requests that the MM contexts return to IDLE state and that the PDP contexts return to INACTIVE state. The SGSN may delete the MM and PDP contexts. The PDP contexts in the GGSN shall be deleted.
- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

6.1.2 Mobility Management States (UMTS Only)

6.1.2.1 PMM-DETACHED State

In the PMM-DETACHED state there is no communication between the MS and the 3G-SGSN. The MS and SGSN contexts hold no valid location or routing information for the MS. The MS MM state machine does not react on system information related to the 3G-SGSN. The MS is not reachable by a 3G-SGSN, as the MS location is not known.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the GPRS Attach procedure. When the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN for performing the GPRS attach, the state changes to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN and in the MS. The PS signalling connection is made up of two parts; an RRC connection and an Iu connection.

6.1.2.2 PMM-IDLE State

The MS location is known in the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a routing area. Paging is needed in order to reach the MS, e.g., for signalling. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts as described in clause "Information Storage".

The MS shall perform a routing area update if the RA changes. Signalling towards the HLR is needed if the 3G-SGSN does not have an MM context for this MS.

The MS and 3G-SGSN shall enter the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

GPRS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED. The 3G-SGSN may perform an implicit GPRS detach any time after the MS reachable timer expiry. The MS's MM context is deleted, preferably after a certain (implementation dependent) time. The HLR may be informed about the deletion (see subclause "Purge Function").

6.1.2.3 PMM-CONNECTED State

The MS location is known in the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a serving RNC. In the PMM-CONNECTED state, the location of the MS is tracked by the serving RNC. The MS performs the routing area update procedure when RAI in the MM system information changes.

When an MS and a 3G-SGSN are in the PMM-CONNECTED state, a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

In the 3G-SGSN, PS signalling connection release or failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC" changes the state to PMM-IDLE.

The MS shall enter the PMM-IDLE state when its PS signalling connection to the 3G-SGSN has been released or broken. This release or failure is explicitly indicated by the RNC to the MS or detected by the MS (RRC connection failure). The radio connection shall also be released if a URA update fails because of "RRC connection not established", or if the URA update timer expires while the MS is out of coverage.

After a signalling procedure (e.g., routing area update), the 3G-SGSN may decide to release the PS signalling connection, after which the state is changed to PMM-IDLE.

GPRS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED.

6.1.2.4 State Transitions and Functions

Figure 17 introduces the MM states for a GPRS subscriber (PMM). The states and activations are further described below the figure.

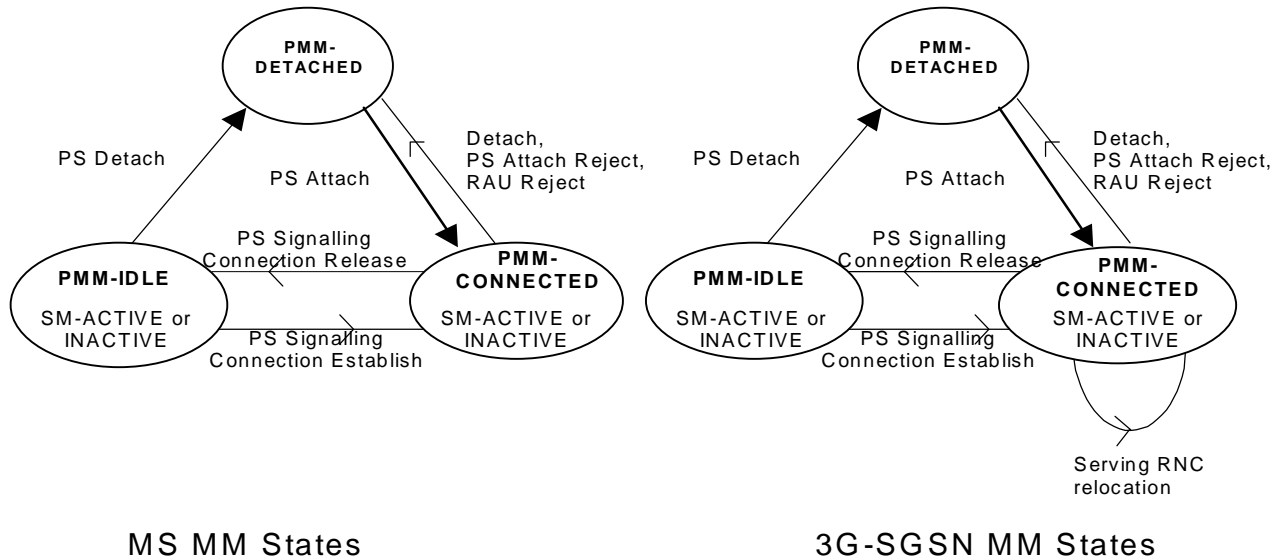


Figure 17: PMM State Model

NOTE: In both the PMM-IDLE and the PMM-CONNECTED states, session management may or may not have activated a PDP context. The consequence is that in PMM-CONNECTED state, only a signalling connection may be established. In PMM-IDLE state, a PDP context may be established, but no corresponding connection over the Iu interface nor the radio are established.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in the MS:

- GPRS Attach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN for performing a GPRS attach. If the GPRS attach is accepted an MM context is created in MS.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in the MS:

- GPRS Detach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after the MS has performed a GPRS detach or after the network-initiated GPRS detach is performed. The MM context in the MS may be deleted.
- RAU Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a RAU is rejected by the 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.
- GPRS Attach Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a GPRS attach is rejected by the 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in the MS:

- PS Signalling Connection Release: The MM context shall move to the PMM-IDLE state when the PS signalling connection is released.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in the MS:

- PS Signalling Connection Establishment: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in the MS:

- Implicit GPRS Detach: The MM context shall locally move to the PMM-DETACHED state, e.g., in the case of removal of the battery, the USIM, or the GSIM from the TE.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN:

- GPRS Attach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and 3G-SGSN for performing a GPRS attach. If the GPRS attach is accepted, an MM context is created in 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in the 3G-SGSN:

- GPRS Detach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after the MS has performed a GPRS detach or after the network-initiated GPRS detach is performed. The MM context in the 3G-SGSN may be deleted.
- RAU Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a RAU is rejected.
- GPRS Attach Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when a PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a GPRS attach is rejected by the 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Signalling Connection Release: The MM context shall move to the PMM-IDLE state when the PS signalling connection is released.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Signalling Connection Establishment: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in the 3G-SGSN:

- Implicit GPRS Detach: The MM context may locally move to the PMM-DETACHED state after expiry of the MS Reachable timer. The MM and PDP context(s) in the 3G-SGSN may be deleted, preferably after an implementation-dependent time.

6.1.2.4.1 Error Cases

In case of an error, the PMM state of the MS and the 3G-SGSN may lose synchronisation. In this case the MS may be in the PMM-IDLE state while the 3G-SGSN is in the PMM-CONNECTED state.

NOTE: The opposite (MS in the PMM-CONNECTED state and SGSN in the PMM-IDLE state) shall never happen because the 3G-SGSN may not have the RAI where the MS is really located, so downlink transfer is impossible until the periodic URA update timer expires.

This situation is recovered by a successful RAU moving the MS to the PMM-CONNECTED state, or by a failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC", triggering a paging procedure from the 3G-SGSN.

NOTE: An RNC shall not release the Iu connection if it could not inform the MS that the radio connection was released.

6.2 Mobility Management Timer Functions

6.2.1 READY Timer Function (GSM Only)

The READY timer function maintains the READY timer in the MS and SGSN. The READY timer controls the time an MS remains in READY state in the MS and the SGSN. The READY timer shall be reset and begin running in the MS when an LLC PDU is transmitted, and in the SGSN when an LLC PDU is correctly received. When the READY timer expires, the MS and SGSN MM contexts shall return to STANDBY state.

The length of the READY timer shall be the same in the MS and SGSN. The initial length of the READY timer shall be defined by a default value. The SGSN, and only the SGSN, may change the length of the READY timer by transmitting a new value in the Attach Accept or Routeing Area Update Accept messages.

If the READY timer length is set to zero, the MS shall immediately be forced into STANDBY state. If the timer length is set to all 1s (binary), then the READY timer function shall be deactivated, i.e., the timer no longer runs and the MS remains in READY state.

6.2.2 Periodic RA Update Timer Function

The Periodic RA Update Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the MS. The length of the periodic RA update timer is sent in the Routeing Area Update Accept or Attach Accept message. The periodic RA update timer is unique within an RA. Upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall start a periodic routeing area update procedure.

NOTE: An MS is said to be in packet domain coverage if it can access packet domain services. These services may be provided by GSM or by UMTS.

If the MS is in coverage but out of packet domain coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires, then, if the MS is IMSI-attached to a network in network operation mode I, the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started immediately. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was IMSI-attached, regardless of the network operation mode, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet domain coverage.

If the MS is out of coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires then:

- if the MS is both IMSI- and GPRS-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services in network operation mode I, then the combined RA / LA update procedure with IMSI attach requested shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage;
- if the MS is both IMSI- and GPRS-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services in network operation mode II or III, or if a GPRS only-attached MS returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services, then the periodic RA update procedure shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage; or
- if the MS returns to coverage in a cell that does not support packet-domain services, and if the MS is IMSI-attached, then the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage in that cell. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was IMSI-attached, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet-domain coverage.

If the MS lost packet-domain coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of packet-domain coverage, then, the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to packet-domain coverage.

If the MS lost coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of coverage, then the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to coverage.

6.2.3 Mobile Reachable Timer Function

The Mobile Reachable Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the SGSN. The mobile reachable timer shall be slightly longer than the periodic RA update timer used by an MS.

The mobile reachable timer is stopped when the READY state or PMM-CONNECTED state is entered. The mobile reachable timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY or PMM-IDLE.

If the mobile reachable timer expires, the SGSN shall clear PPF. Typically, in GPRS, this causes the SGSN to stop sending GPRS paging or CS paging messages to the MS, but other features (e.g., MSC/VLR-based call forwarding) may happen immediately. PPF is set when the next activity from the MS is detected. The MM and PDP contexts shall be kept in the SGSN.

When an MS first registers in an SGSN, then PPF is set.

6.3 Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR

The interactions described in this subclause shall be supported if the optional Gs interface is installed.

An association is created between SGSN and MSC/VLR to provide for interactions between SGSN and MSC/VLR. The association is created when the VLR stores the SGSN number and the SGSN stores the VLR number. The association is used for co-ordinating MSs that are both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached.

The association supports the following actions:

- IMSI attach and detach via SGSN. This makes combined GPRS / IMSI attach and combined GPRS / IMSI detach possible, thus saving radio resources.
- Co-ordination of LA update and RA update, including periodic updates, thus saving radio resources. A combined RA / LA update is sent from the MS to the SGSN. SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR.
- Paging for a CS connection via the SGSN.
- Alert procedures for non-PS services.
- Identification procedure.
- MM Information procedure.

6.3.1 Administration of the SGSN - MSC/VLR Association

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is created at the following occasions:

- Combined GPRS / IMSI attach.
- GPRS attach when the MS is already IMSI-attached.
- Combined RA / LA update when the MS performs IMSI attach and is already GPRS-attached.

Combined RA / LA update when an IMSI and GPRS-attached MS changes from an area of network operation mode II or III to an area of network operation mode I.

The association is initiated by the SGSN. The SGSN creates an association by sending a BSSAP+ message concerning a particular MS to the VLR. To get the VLR number, the SGSN translates the current RAI to a VLR number via a translation table. During a CS connection, an MS in class-B mode of operation (GSM only) cannot perform GPRS attach nor routing area updates, only MSs in class-A mode of operation can perform these procedures. If a GPRS attach was made during a CS connection, the association shall be initiated by a combined RA / LA update after the CS connection has been released.

The association is updated on the following occasions:

- When an MS changes VLR.
- When an MS changes SGSN.

The association is not updated during a CS connection.

When the MS is in idle mode (see GSM 03.22 [7] and 3G TS 23.122 [7b]), the association is updated with the combined RA / LA updates procedure.

In relation with a CS connection, the association is managed in the following way:

MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation:

An MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation makes RA updates but no combined RA / LA updates during the CS connection. In the case when the MS changes SGSN, the SGSN (according to normal RA update procedures, see subclause "Inter SGSN Routing Area Update") updates the HLR and the GGSN, but not the VLR, about the new SGSN number.

In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection is released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. The association is also not updated during the CS connection.

After the CS connection has been released, a combined RA / LA update is performed (if there has been a change of RA, or if a GPRS attach was performed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I), and the association is updated according to combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". If the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, then the MS performs an LA update.

MS in class-B mode of operation (GSM only):

An MS in class-B mode of operation does not make any RA updates during a CS connection. The SGSN number therefore remains the same during the CS connection and needs not be updated in the VLR. In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection has been released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. Therefore, the VLR number remains the same during the CS connection. After the CS connection has been released, the MS shall perform an RA update and an LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, or a combined RA / LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I. The association is updated according to the combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclauses "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update" and "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure".

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is removed at the following occasions:

- At IMSI detach.
- At GPRS detach.

When the MSC/VLR receives an LA update via the A or Iu interface from an MS for which an association exists, then the MSC/VLR shall remove the association without notifying the SGSN. When the SGSN receives a (non-combined) RA update from an MS for which an association exists, then the SGSN shall remove the association without notifying the MSC/VLR. When the MSC/VLR receives a BSSAP+ MS Unreachable message from the SGSN indicating that PPF is cleared, then the state of the association shall not be changed at the MSC/VLR.

6.3.2 Combined RA / LA Updating

When the MS is both IMSI and GPRS-attached, the LA and RA updating is done in a co-ordinated way to save radio resources if supported by the network operation mode. When the MS enters a new RA in network operation mode I, then the MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN, as described in subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". The LA update is included in the RA update. The SGSN then forwards the LA update to the MSC/VLR. The MSC/VLR optionally returns a new VLR TMSI that is sent to the MS via the SGSN.

An MS in class-A mode of operation involved in a CS connection makes only RA updates and no combined RA / LA updates to the SGSN.

An MS in class-B mode of operation involved in a CS connection does not make any updates during the CS connection.

An MS in class-C mode of operation never makes combined RA / LA updates.

6.3.3 CS Paging (GSM Only)

When an MS is both IMSI and GPRS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. If the MS is in STANDBY state, then it is paged in the routeing area and in the null routeing area (see subclause "Routeing Area Identity "). If the MS is in READY state, then it is paged in the cell. The paging procedure is supervised in the MSC by a paging timer. The SGSN converts the MSC paging message into an SGSN paging message.

The CS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 18. Each step is explained in the following list.

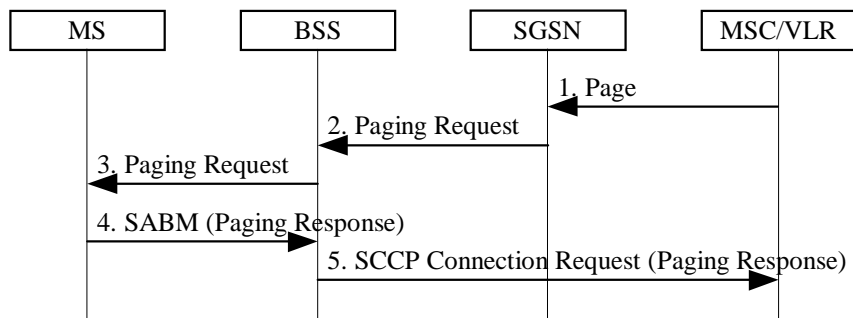


Figure 18: CS Paging Procedure

- 1) The SGSN receives a Page (IMSI, VLR TMSI, Channel Needed, Priority, Location Information) message from the MSC. Channel Needed is defined in GSM 08.08 [18] and indicates to the MS which type of CS channel is needed to be requested in the response. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are optional parameters. Priority is the circuit-switched paging priority parameter as defined in GSM 08.08. The SGSN maps Priority to QoS.
- 2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, TLLI, VLR TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS) message to the BSS serving the MS. Area is derived from either the MS's MM context in the SGSN or, if no such information is available, from the Location Information received from the MSC/VLR. Area indicates a single cell for a READY state MS or a routeing area for a STANDBY state MS. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are included if received from the MSC. If Channel Needed was not received from the MSC, then a default Channel Needed parameter indicating circuit-switched paging is included by the SGSN. QoS indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. If the location area where the MS was last known to be located has an associated null routeing area, then the SGSN shall send an additional BSSGP Paging Request message to each BSS serving this null RA.
- 3) The BSS translates the incoming BSSGP Paging Request message into one radio Paging Request message per cell. If a dedicated radio resource is assigned to the MS in a cell, then the BSS transmits one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on this radio resource, without stopping possibly ongoing data transfers for the MS. Otherwise, the BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on the appropriate paging channel in each addressed cell. This is described in GSM 03.64.
- 4) Upon receipt of a Paging Request message for a circuit-switched service the MS may accept to respond to this request and shall then follow the CS procedures for paging response (random access, immediate assignment, and paging response) as specified in GSM 04.08 [13].
- 5) When received at the BSS, the Paging Response message is sent to the MSC which shall then stop the paging response timer.

6.3.3.1 Paging Co-ordination for GPRS

The network may provide co-ordination of paging for circuit-switched and packet-switched services. Paging co-ordination means that the network sends paging messages for circuit-switched services on the same channel as used for packet-switched services, i.e., on the GPRS paging channel or on the GPRS traffic channel, and the MS needs only to monitor that channel. Three network operation modes are defined:

- Network operation mode I: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS, either on the same channel as the GPRS paging channel (i.e., the packet paging channel or the CCCH paging channel), or on a GPRS traffic channel. This means that the MS needs only to monitor one paging channel, and that it receives CS paging messages on the packet data channel when it has been assigned a packet data channel.
- Network operation mode II: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and this channel is also used for GPRS paging. This means that the MS needs only to monitor the CCCH paging channel, but that CS paging continues on this paging channel even if the MS has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode III: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and sends a GPRS paging message on either the packet paging channel (if allocated in the cell) or on the CCCH paging channel. This means that an MS that wants to receive pages for both circuit-switched and packet-switched services shall monitor both paging channels if the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell. No paging co-ordination is performed by the network.

Table 2: Network Operation Modes for GSM

| Mode | Circuit Paging Channel | GPRS Paging Channel | Paging co-ordination |
|------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| I | Packet Paging Channel | Packet Paging Channel | Yes |
| | CCCH Paging Channel | CCCH Paging Channel | |
| | Packet Data Channel | Not Applicable | |
| II | CCCH Paging Channel | CCCH Paging Channel | No |
| III | CCCH Paging Channel | Packet Paging Channel | No |
| | CCCH Paging Channel | CCCH Paging Channel | |

When the Gs interface is present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the SGSN, thus allowing network co-ordination of paging. Paging co-ordination shall be made by the SGSN based on the IMSI, and is provided independently of whether the MS is in STANDBY or in READY state. The network operates in mode I.

When the Gs interface is not present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the A interface, and co-ordination of paging cannot be performed. The network shall then either:

- operate in mode II, meaning that the packet common control channel shall not be allocated in the cell; or
- operate in mode III, meaning that the packet common control channel shall be used for GPRS paging when the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell.

The network operation mode (mode I, II, or III) shall be indicated as system information to MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to GPRS services, to non-GPRS services, or to both.

6.3.4 CS Paging (UMTS Only)

When an MS is both IMSI- and GPRS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. Paging is defined in subclause "Paging Initiated by CN".

6.3.4.1 Network Operation Modes for UMTS

The network operation mode is used to indicate whether the Gs interface is installed or not. When the Gs interface is present, MT can initiate combine procedures.

Table 3: Network Operation Modes for UMTS

| Mode | Network configuration | Combined procedure by MT |
|------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| I | Gs interface is present | Yes |
| II | Gs interface is not present | No |

The network operation mode (mode I or II) shall be indicated as system information to the MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to CS domain services, to PS domain services, or to both. Furthermore, based on the mode of operation, the MS can choose whether it can initiate combine update procedures or separate update procedures, according to its capabilities.

NOTE: Network operation modes I and II for UMTS correspond to modes I and II, respectively, for GSM. Mode III applies to GSM and not to UMTS.

6.3.5 Non-GPRS Alert

The MSC/VLR may request an SGSN to report activity from a specific MS. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall send a BSSAP+ Alert Request (IMSI) message to the SGSN where the MS is currently GPRS-attached.

Upon reception of the Alert Request (IMSI) message, the SGSN shall set NGAF. If NGAF is set for an MS, the SGSN shall inform the MSC/VLR when the next activity from that MS (and the MS is both IMSI- and GPRS-attached) is detected, and shall clear NGAF.

If the activity detected by the SGSN leads to a procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall just follow this procedure. If the activity detected by the SGSN does not lead to any procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall send an MS Activity Indication (IMSI) message towards the MSC/VLR.

6.3.6 MS Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both IMSI- and GPRS-attached, the VLR may perform the MS Information procedure via the SGSN. If the information requested by the VLR in the MS Information procedure is known by the SGSN, then the SGSN shall return this information to the VLR without interrogating the MS.

If the information requested is MS identity information (e.g., IMEI) that is not known by the SGSN but is known by the MS, then the SGSN shall interrogate the MS in a similar manner to that described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

In GSM, if the information requested is MS location information then this indicates a request for Cell Global Identity and Cell Identity Age. In UMTS, if the information requested is MS location information then this indicates a request for Service Area Identity and Service Area Code Age, and in this case if an Iu connection for the MS exists, then the SGSN shall use the Location Reporting procedure (see subclause "Location Reporting Procedure") in order to retrieve the Service Area Identity.

The MS Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 19. Each step is explained in the following list.

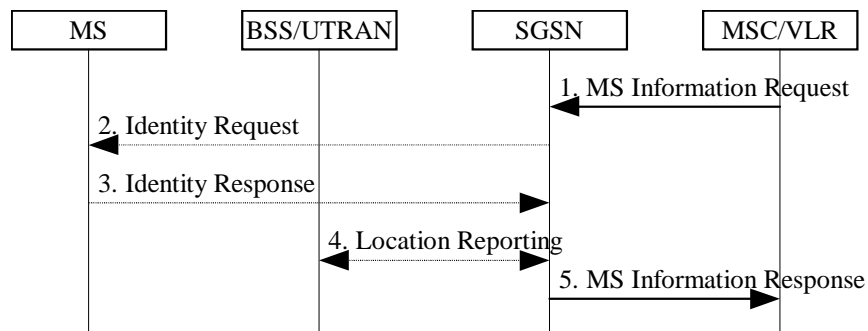


Figure 19: MS Information Procedure

- 1) The MSC/VLR sends an MS Information Request (IMSI, Information Type) message to the SGSN. Information Type indicates the information that the MSC/VLR is requesting for that IMSI.
- 2) If the information requested is not known by the SGSN but should be known by the MS, then the SGSN interrogates the MS in a similar manner to that described in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". The SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type) message to the MS.
- 3) The MS responds with an Identity Response (Mobile Identity) message to the SGSN.
- 4) In UMTS, if an Iu connection for the MS exists, then the SGSN shall use the Location Reporting procedure to retrieve the Service Area Identity.
- 5) The SGSN sends an MS Information Response (IMSI, Information) message to the MSC/VLR. Information contains the information requested by the MSC/VLR.

6.3.7 MM Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both IMSI- and GPRS-attached, the VLR may perform the MM Information procedure via the SGSN. The MM Information procedure is typically used to inform the MS about such things as the network name and the local timezone of the mobile.

The MM Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 20.

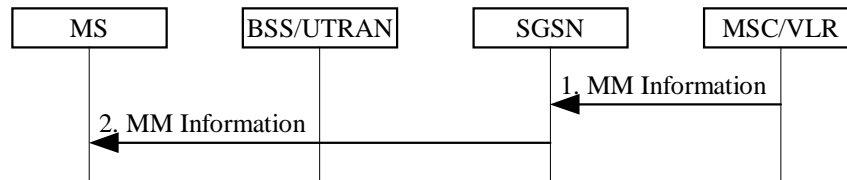


Figure 20: MM Information Procedure

- 1) The SGSN receives an MM Information (IMSI, Information) message from the MSC/VLR. Information is the information that the MSC/VLR is sending to the MS.
- 2) The SGSN sends an MM Information (Information) message to the MS including the information received by the MSC/VLR.

6.4 MM Procedures

In GSM, the MM procedures shall use the LLC and RLC/MAC protocols for message transmission across the Gb and Um interfaces. The MM procedures shall provide information to the underlying layers to enable reliable transmission of MM messages on the Um interface. GSM 03.64 defines the mapping between LLC and the radio channels used.

In UMTS, the MM procedures shall use the RANAP and RRC protocols for message transmission across the Iu and Uu interfaces, respectively.

Furthermore, the MM procedures use MAP interfaces between SGSN and HLR (Gr), and between SGSN and EIR (Gf), and a BSSAP+ interface between SGSN and MSC/VLR (Gs).

User data can in general be transmitted during MM signalling procedures. In GSM, user data transmitted during attach, authentication, and routing area update procedures may be lost and may therefore have to be retransmitted. In order to minimise the need for retransmission, the MS and SGSN should not transmit user data during the attach, authentication, and routing area update procedures.

6.5 GPRS Attach Function

An MS shall perform a GPRS Attach to the SGSN in order to obtain access to the GPRS services. If the MS is connected via a GSM radio, it shall perform a GSM GPRS Attach procedure. If the MS is connected via a UMTS radio access network, it shall perform a UMTS GPRS Attach procedure.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI.

6.5.1 GSM GPRS Attach Procedure

A GPRS attach is made to the SGSN. A GPRS-attached MS makes IMSI attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operation mode is I. In network operation modes II and III, or if the MS is not GPRS-attached, then the MS makes IMSI attach as already defined in GSM. An IMSI-attached MS in class-A mode of operation engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) GPRS Attach procedure when it performs a GPRS attach.

At the RLC/MAC layer, the MS shall identify itself with a Local or Foreign TLLI if the MS is already GPRS-attached and is performing an IMSI attach. Otherwise, the MS shall identify itself with a Foreign TLLI, or a Random TLLI if a

valid P-TMSI is not available. The Foreign or Random TLLI is used as an identifier during the attach procedure until a new P-TMSI is allocated.

After having executed the GPRS attach, the MS is in READY state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An IMSI-attached MS that can only operate in class-C mode of operation shall follow the normal IMSI detach procedure before it makes a GPRS attach. A GPRS-attached MS in class-C mode of operation shall always perform a GPRS detach before it makes an IMSI attach.

If the network operates in mode I (see subclause "Paging Co-ordination for GPRS"), then an MS that is both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

If the network operates in mode II or III, then a GPRS-attached MS that has the capability to be simultaneously GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the (non-combined) Routeing Area Update procedures, and either:

- access the non-GPRS common control channels for CS operation (the way that CS operation is performed in parallel with GPRS operation is an MS implementation issue outside the scope of the present document); or
- if CS operation is not desired, depending on system information that defines whether or not explicit detach shall be used, either:
 - avoid all CS signalling (in which case the MS may be implicitly IMSI detached after a while); or
 - perform an explicit IMSI detach via the non-GPRS common control channels (if the MS was already IMSI-attached).

The Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 21.

6.5.2 UMTS GPRS Attach Procedure

A GPRS-attached MS makes an IMSI attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operates in mode I. In network operates in mode II, or if the MS is not GPRS-attached, then the MS makes a normal IMSI attach. An IMSI-attached MS engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) GPRS Attach procedure when it performs a GPRS attach.

After having executed the GPRS attach, the MS is in the PMM-CONNECTED state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An IMSI-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall follow the normal IMSI detach procedure before it makes a GPRS attach. A GPRS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall perform a GPRS detach before it makes an IMSI attach.

The Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 21.

6.5.3 Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure

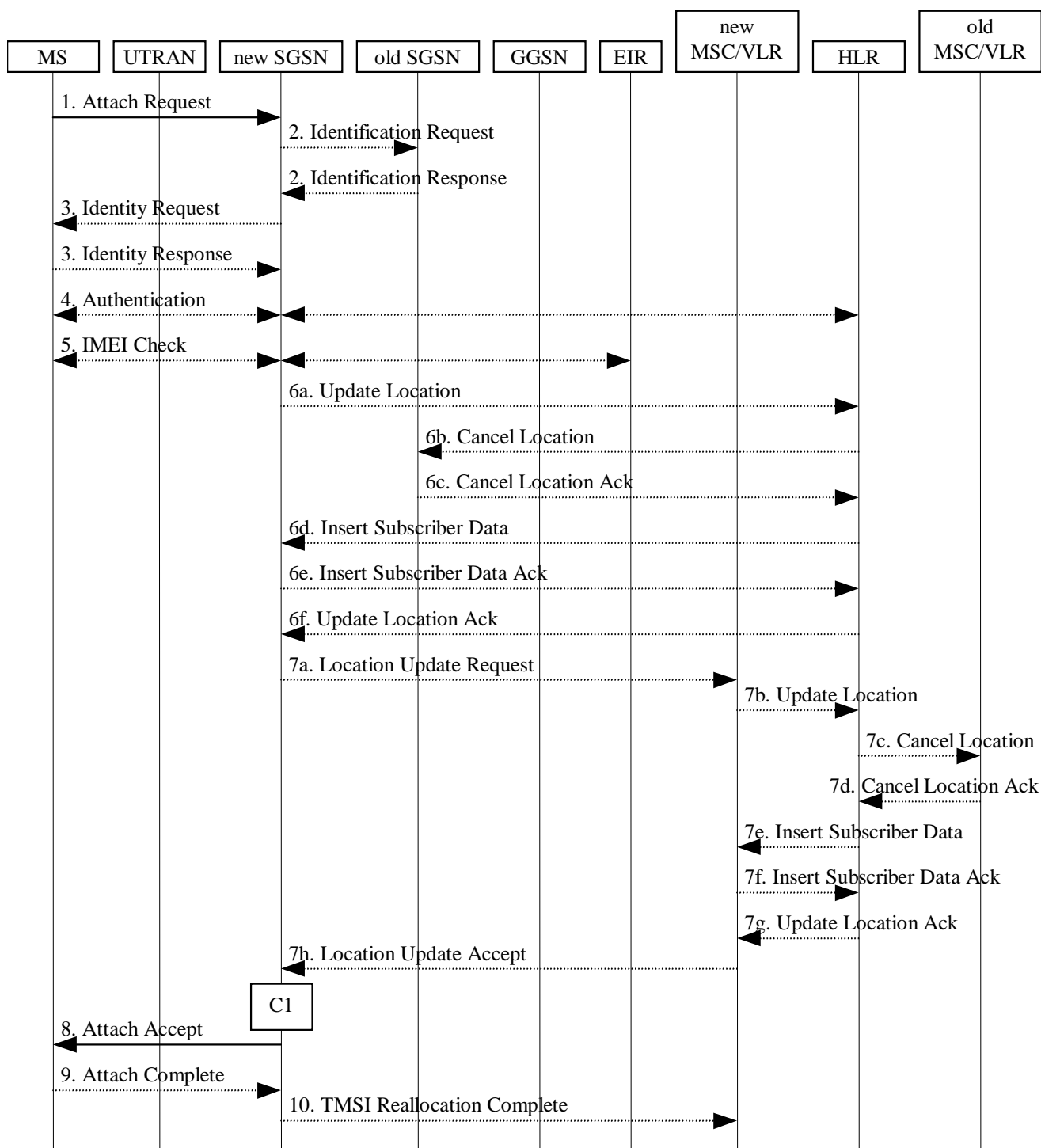


Figure 21: Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure

- 1) For GPRS, the MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Classmark, CKSN, Attach Type, DRX Parameters, old P-TMSI Signature) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. Classmark contains the MS's GPRS multislot capabilities and supported GPRS ciphering algorithms in addition to the existing classmark parameters defined in GSM 04.08. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., GPRS attach only, GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests and channel assignments. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message.

For UMTS, the MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Core Network Classmark, KSI, Attach Type, old P-TMSI Signature, Follow On Request) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. KSI shall be included if the MS has valid security parameters. Core Network Classmark is describe in subclause "MS Network Capability". Follow On Request shall be set by the MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the GPRS Attach procedure. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., GPRS attach only, GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach.

- 2) If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication Triplets (for GPRS) or Authentication Vectors (for UMTS)). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.
- 3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).
- 4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.
- 5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.
- 6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:
 - a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.
 - b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.
 - c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.
 - d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.
 - e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

- f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.
- 7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.
- a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Attach Type indicated combined GPRS / IMSI attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.
- b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.
- c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.
- d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
- e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.
- f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).
- g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.
- h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.
- 8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.
- 9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.
- 10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.6 Detach Function

The GPRS Detach procedure allows:

- an MS to inform the network that it does not want access the SGSN-based services any longer; and
- the network to inform an MS that it does not have access to the SGSN-based services any more.

The Detach function allows an MS to inform the network that it wants to make a GPRS and/or IMSI detach, and it allows the network to inform an MS that it has been GPRS-detached or IMSI-detached by the network.

The different types of detach are:

- IMSI detach;
- GPRS detach; and
- combined GPRS / IMSI detach (MS-initiated only).

The MS is detached either explicitly or implicitly:

- Explicit detach: The network or the MS explicitly requests detach.
- Implicit detach: The network detaches the MS, without notifying the MS, a configuration-dependent time after the mobile reachable timer expired, or after an irrecoverable radio error causes disconnection of the logical link.

In the explicit detach case, a Detach Request (Cause) is sent by the SGSN to the MS, or by the MS to the SGSN.

The MS can make an IMSI detach in one of two ways depending on if it is GPRS-attached or not:

- A GPRS-attached MS sends a Detach Request message to the SGSN, indicating an IMSI detach. This can be made in combination with GPRS detach.
- An MS that is not GPRS-attached makes the IMSI detach as already defined in GSM or UMTS.

In the MO Detach Request message there is an indication to tell if the detach is due to switch off or not. The indication is needed to know whether a Detach Accept message should be returned or not.

In the network-originated Detach Request message there may be an indication to tell the MS that it is requested to initiate GPRS Attach and PDP Context Activation procedures for the previously activated PDP contexts.

6.6.1 MS-Initiated Detach Procedure

The MS-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the MS is illustrated in Figure 22.

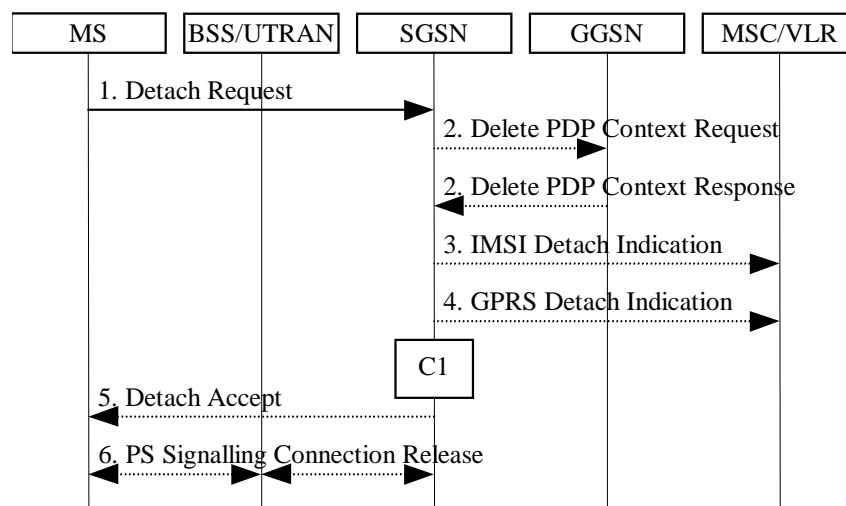


Figure 22: MS-Initiated Combined GPRS / IMSI Detach Procedure

- 1) The MS detaches by sending Detach Request (Detach Type, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Switch Off) to the SGSN. Detach Type indicates which type of detach that is to be performed, i.e., GPRS Detach only, IMSI Detach only or combined GPRS and IMSI Detach. Switch Off indicates whether the detach is due to a switch off situation or not. For UMTS, the Detach Request message includes P-TMSI and P-TMSI Signature. P-TMSI Signature is used to check the validity of the Detach Request message. If P-TMSI Signature is not valid or is not included, then authentication procedure should be performed.
- 2) If GPRS detach, the active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID).
- 3) If IMSI detach, the SGSN sends an IMSI Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR.
- 4) If the MS wants to remain IMSI-attached and is doing a GPRS detach, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

- 5) If Switch Off indicates that the detach is not due to a switch off situation, the SGSN sends a Detach Accept to the MS.
- 6) If the MS was GPRS detached, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.6.2 Network-Initiated Detach Procedure

6.6.2.1 SGSN-Initiated Detach Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the SGSN is illustrated in Figure 23.

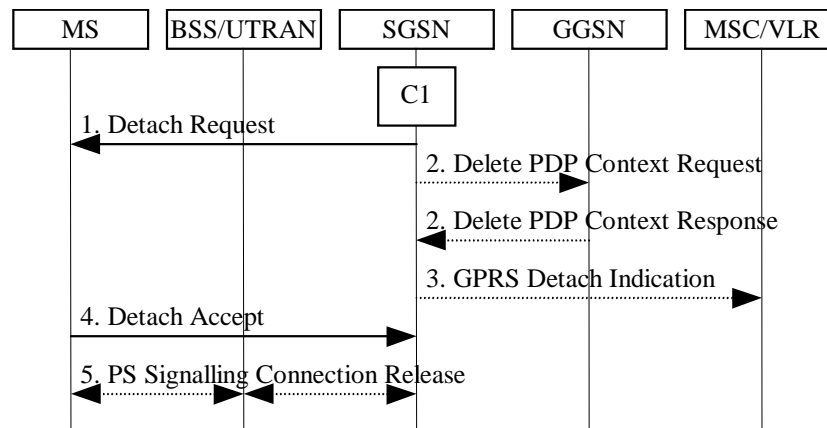


Figure 23: SGSN-Initiated GPRS Detach Procedure

- 1) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type indicates if the MS is requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation for the previously activated PDP contexts. If so, the attach procedure shall be initiated when the detach procedure is completed.
- 2) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.
- 3) If the MS was both IMSI- and GPRS-attached, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.
- 4) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 1.
- 5) After receiving the Detach Accept message, if Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.6.2.2 HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure

The HLR-Initiated Detach procedure is initiated by the HLR. The HLR uses this procedure for operator-determined purposes to request the removal of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts at the SGSN. The HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure is illustrated in Figure 24.

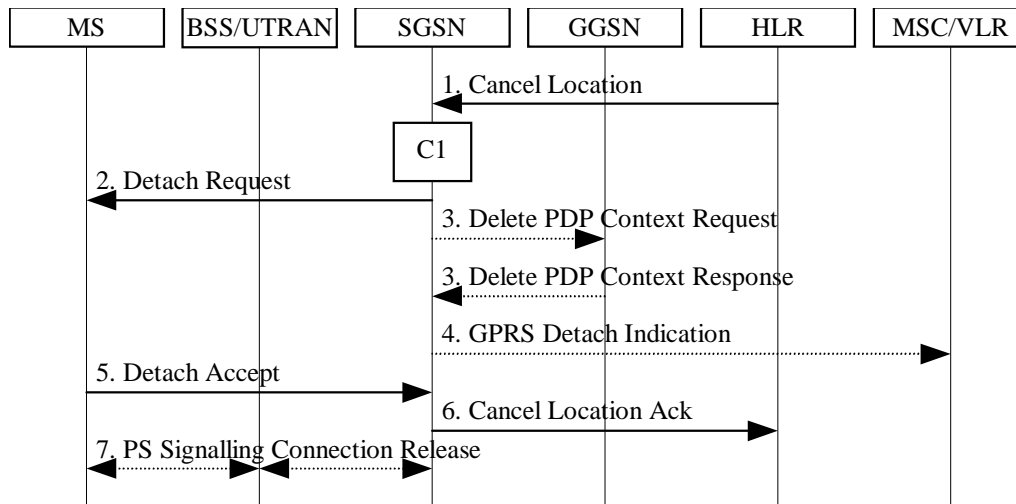


Figure 24: HLR-Initiated GPRS Detach Procedure

- 1) If the HLR wants to request the immediate deletion of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts from the SGSN, the HLR shall send a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Subscription Withdrawn.
- 2) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type shall indicate that the MS is not requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation.
- 3) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.
- 4) If the MS was both IMSI- and GPRS-attached, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.
- 5) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 2.
- 6) The SGSN shall confirm the deletion of the MM and PDP contexts with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.
- 7) After receiving the Detach Accept message, if Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

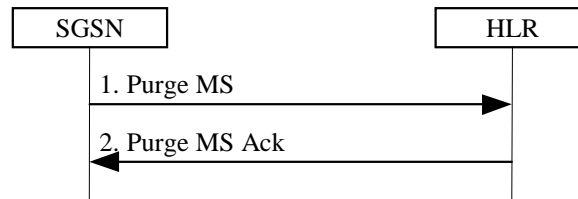
For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.7 Purge Function

The Purge function allows an SGSN to inform the HLR that it has deleted the MM and PDP contexts of a detached MS. The SGSN may, as an implementation option, delete the MM and PDP contexts of an MS immediately after the implicit or explicit detach of the MS. Alternatively, the SGSN may keep for some time the MM and PDP contexts and the authentication triplets of the detached MS, so that the contexts can be reused at a later GPRS attach without accessing the HLR.

When the SGSN deletes the MM and PDP contexts, it shall initiate the Purge procedure as illustrated in Figure 25.

**Figure 25: Purge Procedure**

- 1) After deleting the MM and PDP contexts of a detached MS, the SGSN sends a Purge MS (IMSI) message to the HLR.
- 2) The HLR sets the MS Purged for GPRS flag and acknowledges with a Purge MS Ack message.

6.8 Security Function

The Security function:

- Guards against unauthorised packet-domain service usage (authentication of the MS by the network and service request validation).
- Provides user identity confidentiality (temporary identification and ciphering).
- Provides user data and signalling confidentiality (ciphering).
- Provides, for UMTS radio access only, data integrity and origin authentication of signalling data (integrity protection).
- Provides, for UMTS subscriber (USIM) only, authentication of the network by the MS.

Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 and in 3G TS 33.102.

6.8.1 Authentication

The Authentication function includes two types of authentication: "UMTS authentication" and "GSM authentication".

"UMTS authentication" implies mutual authentication, i.e., authentication of the MS by the network and authentication of the network by the MS. It also implies establishment of a new UMTS ciphering key (CK) and integrity key (IK) agreement between the SGSN and the MS.

"GSM authentication" implies authentication of the MS by the network and establishment of a new GSM ciphering key (Kc) agreement between the SGSN and the MS.

6.8.1.1 Authentication of GSM Subscriber

Authentication procedures already defined in GSM shall be used, with the distinction that the procedures are executed from the SGSN. The GPRS Authentication procedure performs subscriber authentication, or selection of the ciphering algorithm and the synchronisation of the start of ciphering, or both. Authentication triplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon IMSI attach, nor location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment. Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 [6].

The Authentication of GSM Subscriber procedure is illustrated in Figure 26.

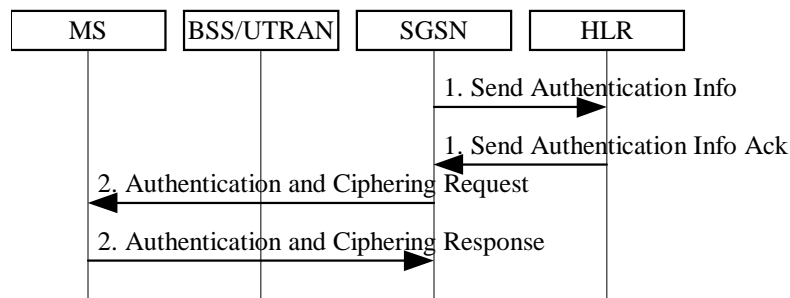


Figure 26: Authentication of GSM Subscriber Procedure

- 1) If the SGSN does not have previously stored authentication triplets, a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.
- 2) The SGSN sends an Authentication and Ciphering Request (RAND, CKSN, Ciphering Algorithm) message to the MS. The MS responds with an Authentication and Ciphering Response (SRES) message.

In GSM, the MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message as described in subclause "Start of Ciphering".

In UMTS, the 3G-SGSN and the MS shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in 3G TS 33.102.

In UMTS, the start of ciphering is controlled by the security mode procedure described in 3G TS 33.102.

6.8.1.2 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber

The UMTS authentication procedure is described in 3G TS 33.102. The UMTS authentication procedure executed from the SGSN performs both the mutual authentication and security keys agreement. Authentication quintuplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon IMSI attach nor upon location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment.

The Authentication of UMTS Subscriber procedure (USIM) is illustrated in Figure 27.

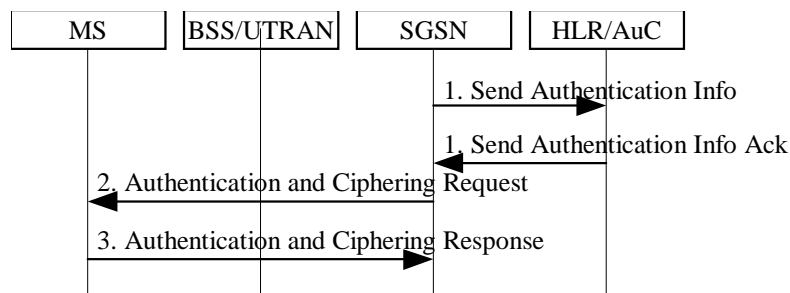


Figure 27: Authentication of UMTS Subscriber Procedure

- 1) If the SGSN does not have previously stored UMTS Authentication Vectors (quintuplets), a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. Upon receipt of this message for a UMTS user, the HLR/AuC responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack message including an ordered array of quintuplets to the SGSN. Each quintuplet contains RAND, XRES, AUTN, CK, and IK. The generation of quintuplets in HLR/AuC for a UMTS user is performed as specified in 3G TS 33.102.
- 2) At authentication of a UMTS subscriber, the SGSN selects the next in-order quintuplet and transmits the RAND and AUTN, that belong to this quintuplet, to the MS in the Authentication and Ciphering Request (RAND, AUTN, CKSN) message. The SGSN also selects a ciphering key sequence number, CKSN, and includes this in the message.

- 3) At reception of this message, the USIM in the MS verifies AUTN and, if accepted, the USIM computes the signature of RAND, RES, in accordance with 3G TS 33.102. If the USIM considers the authentication being successful the MS returns an Authentication and Ciphering Response (RES) message to the SGSN. The USIM in the MS computes then also a new Ciphering Key, CK, and a new Integrity Key, IK. These keys are stored together with the CKSN until CKSN is updated at the next authentication.

If the USIM considers the authentication being unsuccessful, e.g., in case of an authentication synchronisation failure, the MS returns the Authentication and Ciphering Failure message to the SGSN. The actions then taken are described in 3G TS 33.102.

In GSM, the SGSN and the MS shall generate the Kc from the UMTS CK and IK using the standardised conversion function specified for this purpose in 3G TS 33.102.

6.8.2 User Identity Confidentiality

6.8.2.1 User Identity Confidentiality (GSM Only)

A Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) identifies a GSM user. The relationship between TLLI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN or built by the MS as described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS".

6.8.2.2 User Identity Confidentiality (UMTS Only)

A Radio Network Temporary Identity (RNTI) identifies a UMTS user between the MS and the UTRAN. The relationship between RNTI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the UTRAN. A P-TMSI identifies a UMTS user between the MS and the SGSN. The relationship between P-TMSI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN.

6.8.2.3 P-TMSI Signature

P-TMSI Signature is optionally sent by the SGSN to the MS in Attach Accept and Routeing Area Update Accept messages. If the P-TMSI Signature has been sent by the SGSN to the MS since the current P-TMSI was allocated, then the MS shall include the P-TMSI Signature in the next Routeing Area Update Request, Detach Request, and Attach Request for identification checking purposes. If the P-TMSI Signature was sent, then the SGSN shall compare the P-TMSI Signature sent by the MS with the signature stored in the SGSN. If the values do not match, the SGSN should use the security functions to authenticate the MS. If the values match or if the P-TMSI Signature is missing, the SGSN may use the security functions to authenticate the MS. The P-TMSI Signature parameter has only local significance in the SGSN that allocated the signature.

If ciphering is supported by the network, the SGSN shall send the P-TMSI Signature ciphered to the MS. Routeing Area Update Request and Attach Request, into which the MS includes the P-TMSI Signature, are not ciphered.

6.8.2.4 P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

The SGSN may reallocate the P-TMSI at any time. The reallocation procedure can be performed by the P-TMSI Reallocation procedure, or it can be included in the Attach or Routeing Area Update procedures.

The P-TMSI Reallocation procedure is illustrated in Figure 28.

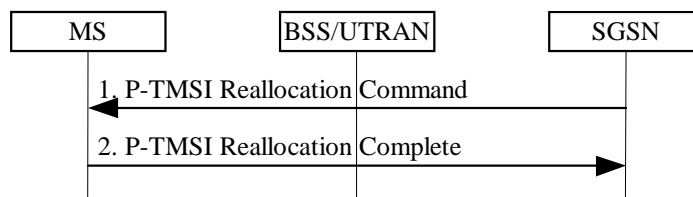


Figure 28: P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

- 1) The SGSN sends a P-TMSI Reallocation Command (new P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI) message to the MS. P-TMSI Signature is an optional parameter that the MS, if received, shall return to the SGSN in the next Attach and Routeing Area Update procedures.

- 2) The MS returns a P-TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the SGSN.

6.8.3 User Data and GMM/SM Signalling Confidentiality

6.8.3.1 Scope of Ciphering

In GSM, the scope of ciphering is from the ciphering function in the SGSN to the ciphering function in the MS. Ciphering is done in the LLC layer, and from the perspective of the existing GSM MS-BTS radio path, an LLC PDU is transmitted as plain text.

In UMTS, the scope of ciphering is from the ciphering function in the UTRAN to the ciphering function in the MS.

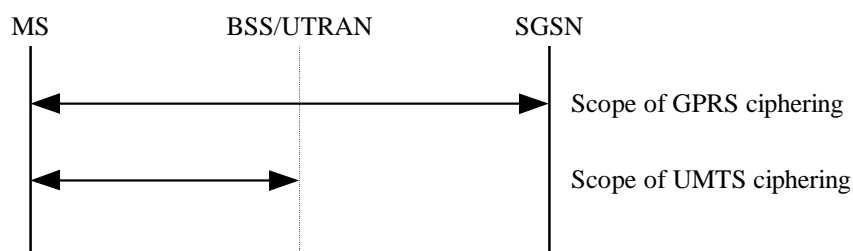


Figure 29: Scope of Ciphering

6.8.3.2 Ciphering Algorithm

GSM 01.61 [2] contains the requirements for the GPRS Encryption Algorithm (GEA). The GSM GPRS ciphering key Kc is an input to the algorithm. The standard key management procedures for the Kc shall be used.

UMTS ciphering is performed with the UMTS Encryption Algorithm (UEA). The UMTS Ciphering Key CK is an input to the algorithm.

6.8.3.3 Start of Ciphering

In GSM, the MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response message is received from the MS. In the routing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routing area update, and if the authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routing Area Update Accept message is received.

In UMTS, the start of ciphering is controlled by the security mode procedure described in 3G TS 33.102.

6.8.4 Identity Check Procedures

The Identity Check procedure is illustrated in Figure 30.

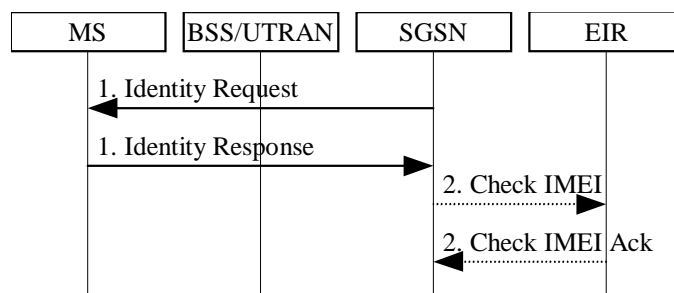


Figure 30: Identity Check Procedure

- 1) The SGSN sends Identity Request (Identity Type) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (Mobile Identity). In UMTS, the MS may choose to send its IMSI encrypted (FFS).

- 2) If the SGSN decides to check the IMEI against the EIR, it sends Check IMEI (IMEI) to EIR. The EIR responds with Check IMEI Ack (IMEI).

6.8.5 Data Integrity Procedure (UMTS Only)

The Data Integrity procedure is performed between the MS and the UTRAN. It is applicable only to radio signalling. The UMTS integrity check is made with the UMTS Integrity Algorithm (UIA). The UMTS Integrity Key IK is an input to the algorithm. The start of the data integrity procedure is controlled by the security mode procedure as described in 3G TS 33.102.

6.9 Location Management Function

The Location Management function:

- provides mechanisms for cell and PLMN selection;
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the Routeing Area for MSs in STANDBY, PMM-IDLE, READY, and PMM-CONNECTED states;
- provides a mechanism for the 2G-SGSN to know the cell identity for MSs in READY state;
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to know the URA identity or cell identity for MSs in PMM-CONNECTED state;
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to indicate to an MS in RRC Connected mode when a Routeing Area Update procedure shall be performed by providing the RAI; and
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the address of the serving RNC handling a MS in PMM-CONNECTED state. This mechanism is the serving RNC relocation procedure.

NOTE: The SGSN may not know the Routeing Area where the UMTS MS is physically located for an MS in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-CONNECTED state is necessarily in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-IDLE state is in RRC Connected mode only if the MS is in CS MM-CONNECTED state.

In UMTS, the tracking of the location of the MS is on three levels (cell, URA, or RA), see 3G TS 23.121.

In GSM, the tracking of the location of the MS is on two levels (cell or RA).

Routeing Area (RA) is defined in subclause "Routeing Area Identity".

6.9.1 Location Management Procedures (GSM Only)

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

The MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS's MM context. The MS detects that a new RA has been entered by periodically comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with that received from the new cell. The MS shall consider hysteresis in signal strength measurements.

When the MS camps on a new cell, possibly in a new RA, this indicates one of three possible scenarios:

- a cell update is required;
- a routeing area update is required; or
- a combined routeing area and location area update is required.

In all three scenarios the MS stores the cell identity in its MM context.

If the MS enters a new PLMN, the MS shall either perform a routeing area update, or enter IDLE state.

In network mode of operation II and III, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall perform the LA update first.

Routeing Area Update Request messages shall be sent unciphered, since in the inter SGSN routeing area update case the new SGSN shall be able to process the request.

6.9.1.1 Cell Update Procedure

A cell update takes place when the MS enters a new cell inside the current RA and the MS is in READY state. If the RA has changed, a routeing area update is executed instead of a cell update.

If the network does not support the Cell Notification (in fact an optimised cell update procedure, see 3G TS 24.008) the MS performs the cell update procedure by sending an uplink LLC frame of any type except the LLC NULL frame (see GSM 04.64), containing the MS's identity, to the SGSN. If the network and the MS support the Cell Notification then the MS shall use the LLC NULL frame, containing the MS's identity, in order to perform a cell update. The support of Cell Notification is mandatory for MS and network but the network as well as the MS has to support the Cell Update Procedure, not using the LLC NULL frame, for backward compatibility reasons.

In the direction towards the SGSN, the BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC to all BSSGP frames, see GSM 08.18. A cell update is any correctly received and valid LLC PDU carried inside a BSSGP PDU containing a new identifier of the cell.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the new cell.

6.9.1.2 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when a GPRS-attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA, when the periodic RA update timer has expired, or, for GSM, when a suspended MS is not resumed by the BSS (see subclause "Suspension of GPRS Services"). The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update.

6.9.1.2.1 Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 31.

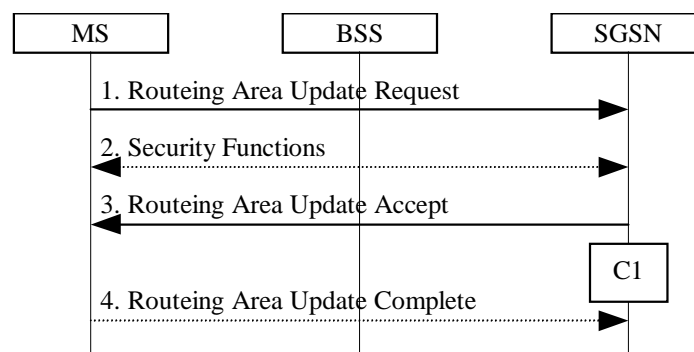


Figure 31: Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

- 1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN, see GSM 08.18.
- 2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".
- 3) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If, due to regional subscription restrictions, the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the

MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) is returned to the MS.

- 4) If P-TMSI was reallocated, the MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

If the routing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.2.2 Inter SGSN Routing Area Update

The Inter SGSN Routing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 32.

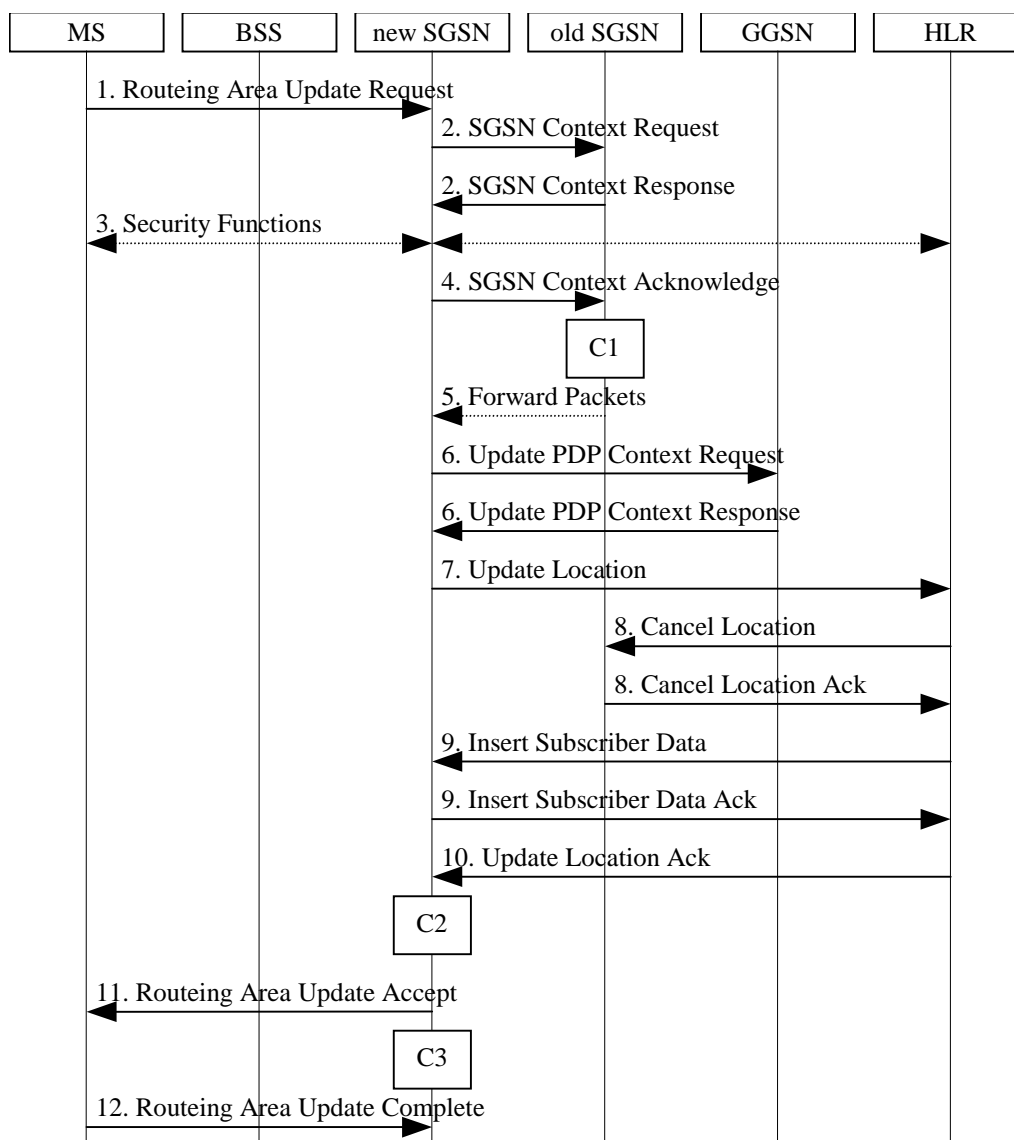


Figure 32: Inter SGSN Routing Area Update Procedure

- 1) The MS sends a Routing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

- 2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.
- 3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.
- 4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.
- 5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.
- 6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return Update PDP Context Response (TEID).
- 7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.
- 8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routing area update before completing the ongoing routing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
- 9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.
- 10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

- 11) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.
- 12) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update-Session.
- C3) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update-Context.

6.9.1.3 Combined RA / LA Update Procedure

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see GSM 03.22), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

6.9.1.3.1 Combined Intra SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (intra SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Figure 33.

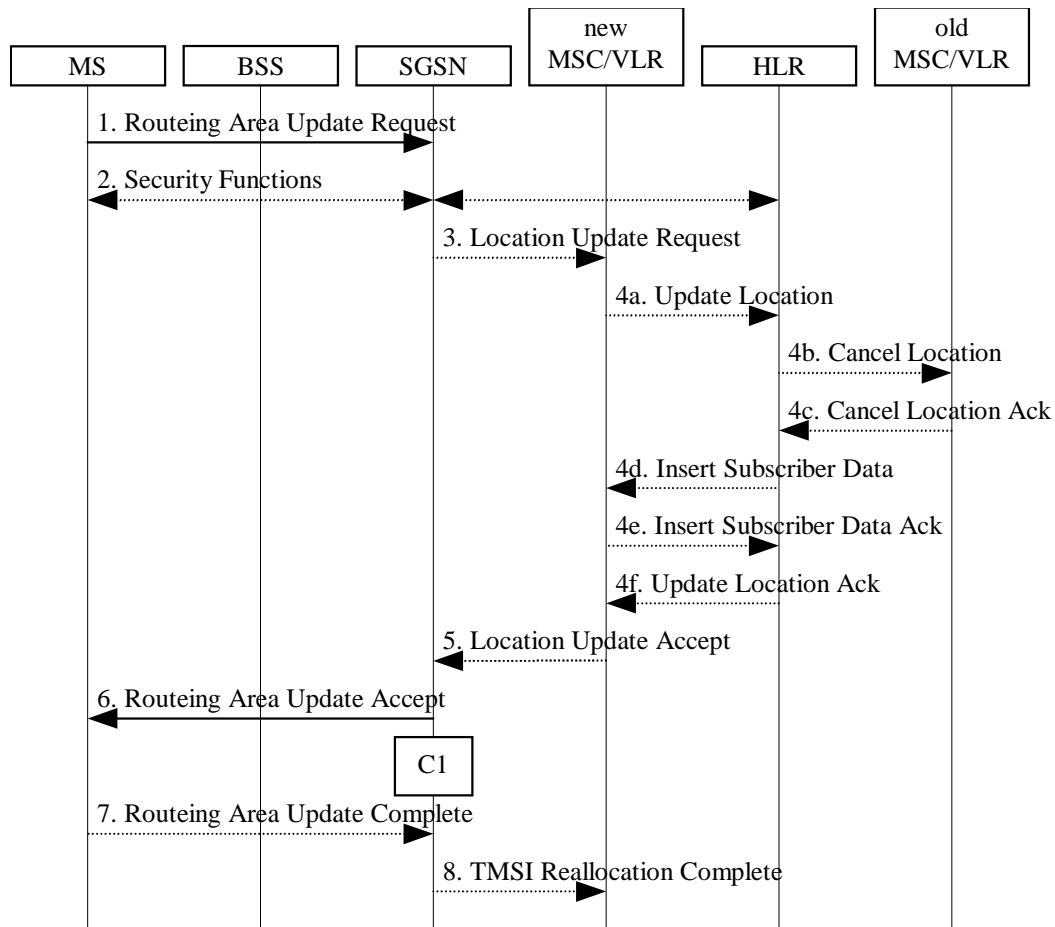


Figure 33: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Intra SGSN RA Update Procedure

- 1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.
- 2) Security functions may be executed. This procedure is defined in subclause "Security Function".
- 3) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.
- 4) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):
 - a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.
 - b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.
 - c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
 - d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

- e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).
- f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.
- 5) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.
- 6) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. The SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).
- 7) If a new P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was received, then the MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.
- 8) The SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful Location Update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.3.2 Combined Inter SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (inter SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Figure 34.

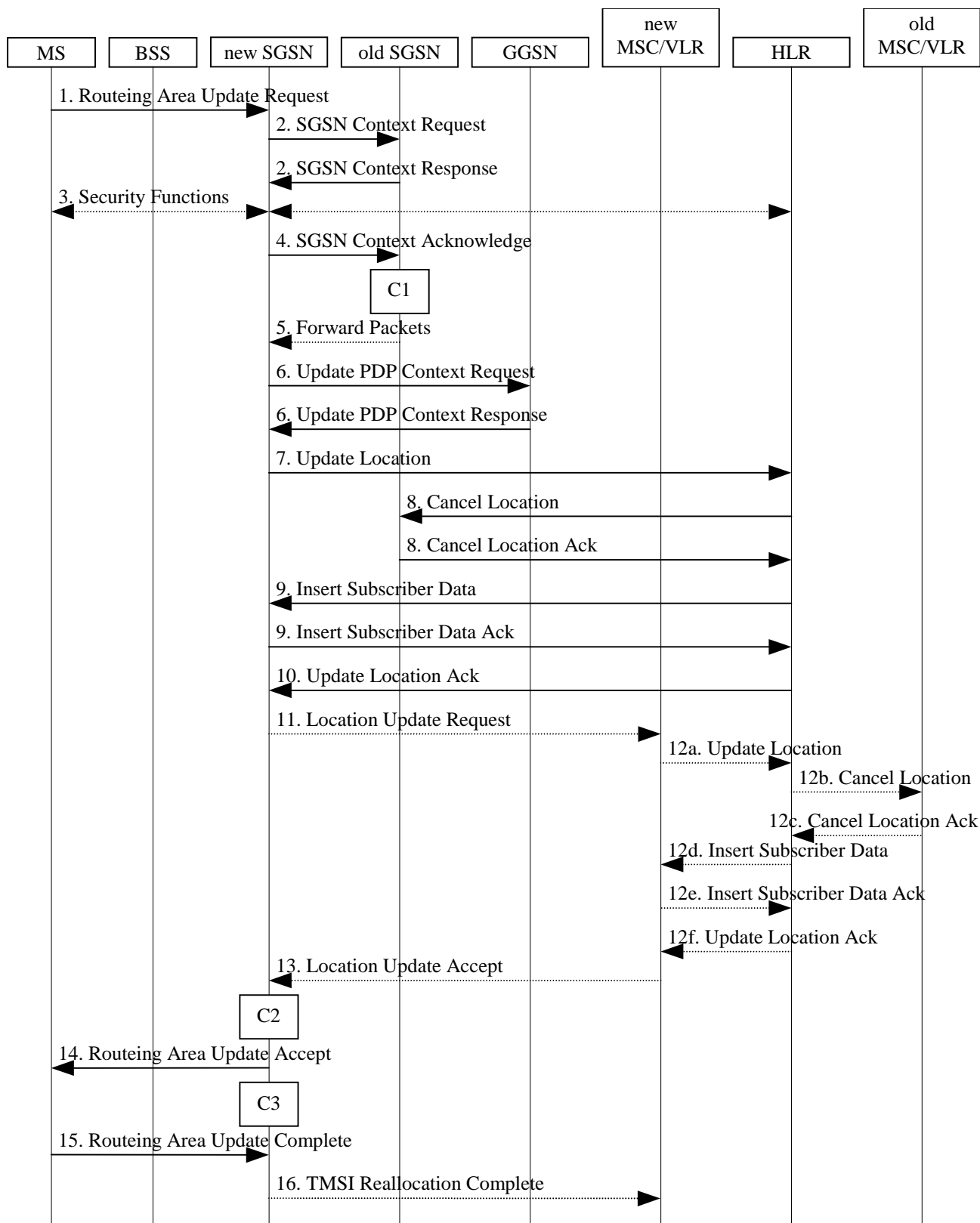


Figure 34: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Inter SGSN RA Update Procedure

- 1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.
- 2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address until the old MM context is cancelled, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the downlink transfer.
- 3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.
- 4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.
- 5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.
- 6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID).
- 7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.
- 8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
- 9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.
- 10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

- 11) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routing area update, then the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 9). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.
- 12) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):
 - a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.
 - b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.
 - c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
 - d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.
 - e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).
 - f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.
- 13) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.
- 14) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.
- 15) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.
- 16) The new SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

In the case of a rejected routing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routing area update.

If the routing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update-Session.
- C3) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update-Context.

6.9.2 Location Management Procedures (UMTS Only)

Refer to 3G TS 25.301 for further information on the location management procedures for the UMTS radio.

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

In this specification, only the Location Management procedures related to the CN are described. These procedures are:

- a routeing area update procedure; and
- Serving RNC relocation procedure.

An MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS. The MS detects that a RA update shall be performed by comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with the RAI received from the network. In RRC-CONNECTED mode (PMM-CONNECTED state or CS MM CONNECTED state), the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the serving RNC via an "MM information" message at the RRC layer. In RRC-IDLE state, the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the broadcasted system information at the RRC layer.

In network mode of operation II, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall start the LA update first. The MS should start RA update procedure before the LA update is completed.

6.9.2.1 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when an attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA or when the periodic RA update timer has expired. The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update. If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

In UMTS, an RA update is either intra-SGSN or inter-SGSN RA update, either combined RA / LA update or only RA update, either initiated by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED or in PMM-IDLE state. All the RA update cases are contained in the procedure illustrated in Figure 35.

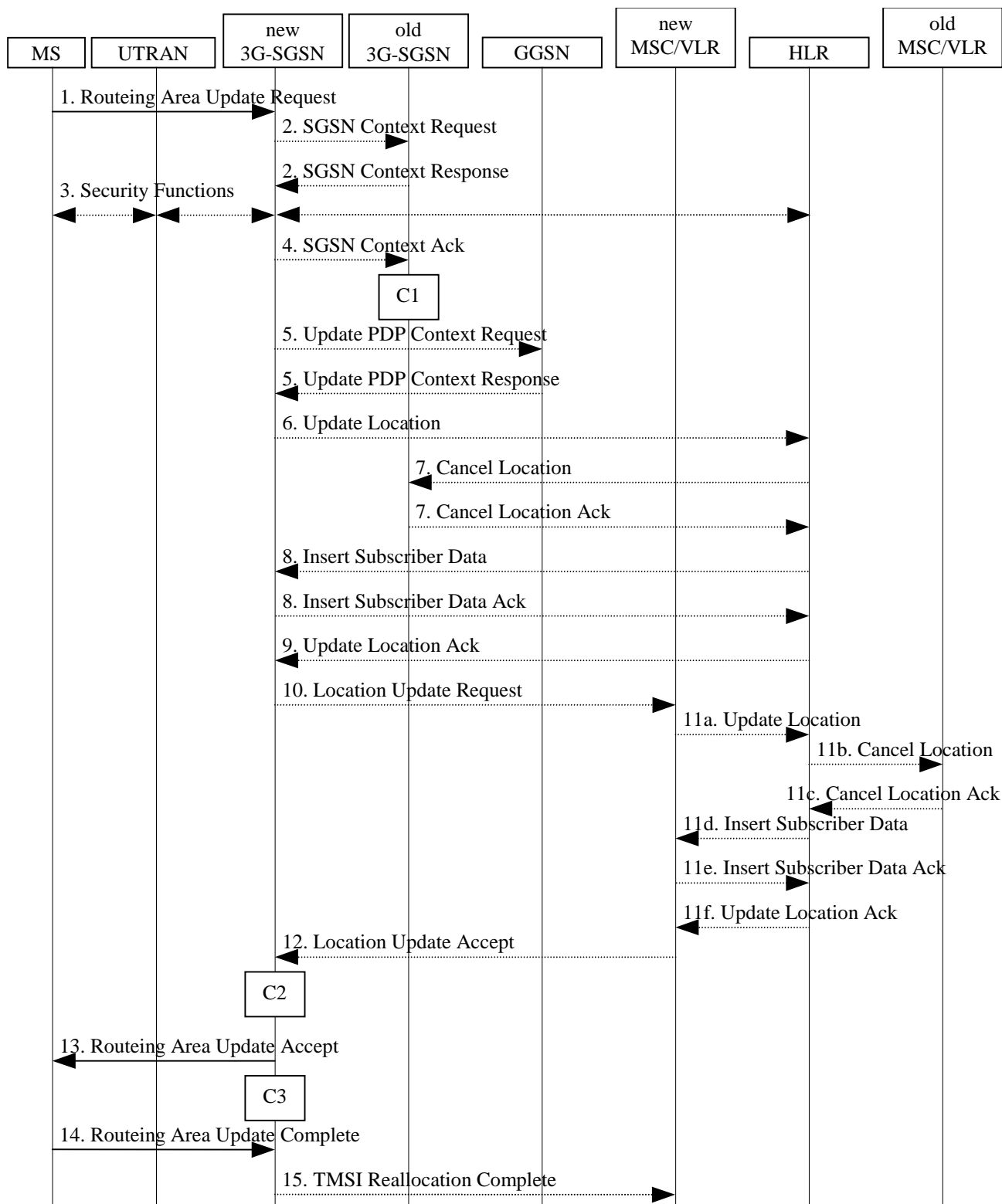


Figure 35: UMTS RA Update Procedure

- 1) The RRC connection is established, if not already done. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, follow on request) to the new SGSN. Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the RA update procedure. Update Type shall indicate:
 - RA Update if the RA Update is triggered by a change of RA;
 - Periodic RA Update if the RA update is triggered by the expiry of the Periodic RA Update timer;
 - Combined RA / LA Update if the MS is also IMSI-attached and the LA update shall be performed in network operation mode I (see subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR"); or
 - Combined RA / LA Update with IMSI attach requested if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach in network operation mode I.

The SRNC shall add the Routeing Area Identity including the RAC and LAC of the area where the MS is located before forwarding the message to the 3G-SGSN. This RA identity corresponds to the RAI in the MM system information sent by the SRNC to the MS.

NOTE: Sending the Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN triggers the establishment of a signalling connection between UTRAN and SGSN for the concerned MS.

- 2) If the RA update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request message (old P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (IMSI, old RAI, MS Validated) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (Cause, IMSI, MM Context, PDP contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN starts a timer.
- 3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.
- 4) If the RA update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update, the new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.
- 5) If the RA update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, Tunnel Endpoint Identifier,) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (Tunnel Endpoint Identifier). Note: If the RA update is an Inter-SGSN routeing area update initiated by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state, then the Update PDP Context Request message is sent as described in subclause "Serving RNS Relocation Procedures".
- 6) If the RA update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.
- 7) If the RA update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM context. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. It also ensures that the MM context is kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

- 8) If the RA update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, subscription data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.
- 9) If the RA update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.
- 10) If Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routing area update, then the association has to be established, and the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with ISI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 8). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.
- 11) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):
 - a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.
 - b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.
 - c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
 - d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.
 - e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).
 - f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.
- 12) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.
- 13) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM context for the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).
- 14) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.
- 15) The new SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

NOTE: Steps 11, 12, and 15, are performed only if step 9 is performed.

In the case of a rejected routing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered up.

If the routing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter PMM-DETACHED state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-PS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update-Session.
- C3) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update-Context.

6.9.2.2 Serving RNS Relocation Procedures

6.9.2.2.1 Serving SRNS Relocation Procedure

This procedure is only performed for an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving SRNS Relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN to CN connection point at the UTRAN side from the source SRNC to the target RNC, from a "standing still position". In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the source SRNC, an Intra SGSN SRNS Relocation procedure is performed. If the routeing area is changed, then this procedure is followed by an Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure. The SGSN detects that it is an Intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the HLR about the new MS location.

Figure 36 shows SRNS relocation when source SRNC and target RNC are connected to different SGSNs. Figure 37 shows the situation after SRNS Relocation procedure and Routeing Area Update procedure have been completed. In the case described in Figure 36 and Figure 37 the MS is in state MM-IDLE.

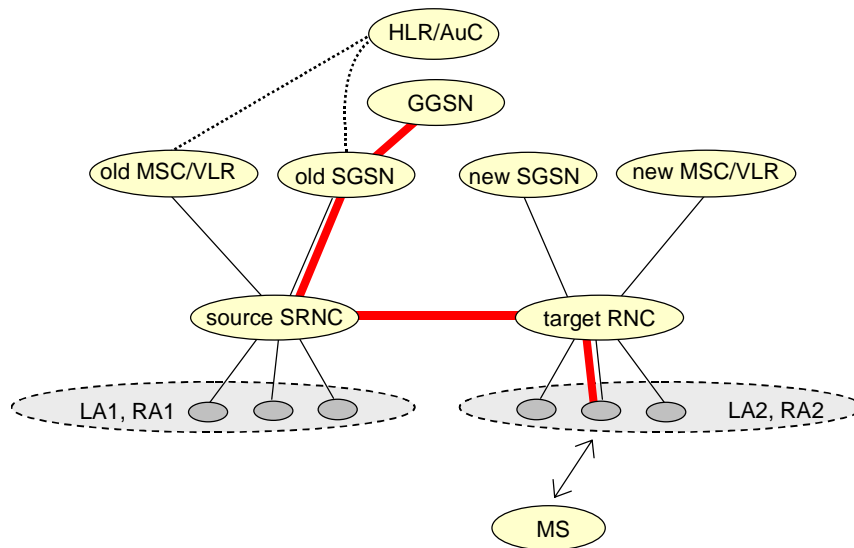


Figure 36: Before SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update

Before the Serving SRNS Relocation procedure and RA update, the MS is registered in the old SGSN. The source RNC is acting as serving RNC (SRNC).

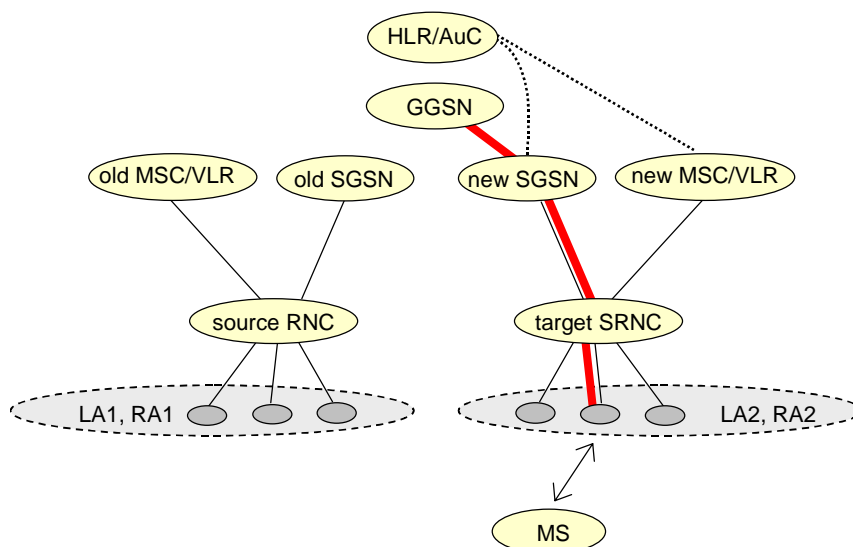


Figure 37: After SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update

After the Serving SRNS Relocation procedure and RA update, the MS is registered in the new SGSN. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the new SGSN, and the target RNC is acting as serving RNC.

The Serving SRNS Relocation procedure is illustrated in Figure 38. The sequence is valid for both intra SGSN SRNS relocation and inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

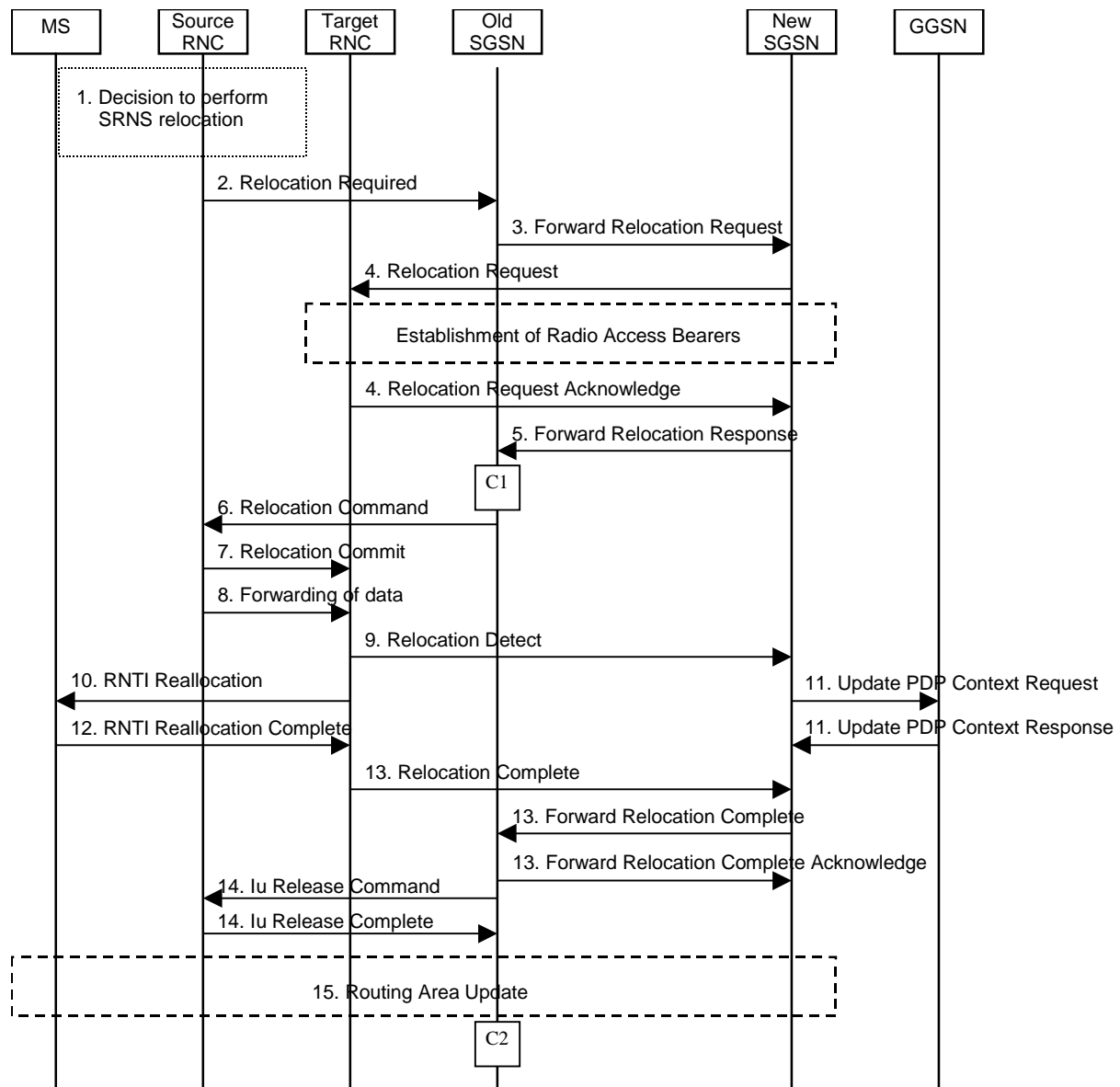


Figure 38: Serving SRNS Relocation Procedure

- 1) The source SRNC decides to perform/initiate an SRNS relocation.
- 2) The source SRNC initiates the relocation preparation procedure by sending a Relocation Required message (Relocation Type, Cause, Source ID, Target ID, Source RNC to target RNC transparent container) to the old SGSN. The source SRNC shall set the Relocation Type to "UE not involved". The Source to Target RNC Transparent Container includes the necessary information for Relocation co-ordination, security functionality and RRC protocol context information (including UE Capabilities).
- 3) The old SGSN determines from the Target ID if the SRNS Relocation is intra SGSN SRNS relocation or inter SGSN SRNS relocation. In case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation the old SGSN initiates the relocation resource allocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Request message (IMSI, Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Signalling, MM Context, PDP Context, Target Identification, UTRAN transparent container, RANAP Cause) to the new SGSN. At the same time a timer is started on the MM and PDP contexts in the old SGSN (see the Routing Area Update procedure in subclause "Location Management Procedures (UMTS Only)"). The Forward Relocation Request message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

- 4) The new SGSN sends a Relocation Request message (Permanent NAS UE Identity, Cause, CN Domain Indicator, Source RNC to target RNC transparent container, RABs to be setup) to the target RNC. For each RAB requested to be established, the RABs to be setup information elements shall contain information such as RAB ID, RAB parameters, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The RAB ID information element contains the NSAPI value, and the RAB parameters information element gives the QoS profile. The Transport Layer Address is the SGSN Address for user data, and the Iu Transport Association corresponds to Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Data. After all necessary resources for accepted RABs including the Iu user plane are successfully allocated, the target RNC shall send the Relocation Request Acknowledge message (RABs setup, RABs failed to setup) to the new SGSN. The target RNC will for each RAB to be setup (defined by an IP Address and a Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) receive both forwarded downstream PDUs from the source SRNC as well as downstream PDUs from the new SGSN.
- 5) When resources for the transmission of user data between target RNC and new SGSN have been allocated and the new SGSN is ready for relocation of SRNS, the Forward Relocation Response message (Cause, RANAP Cause, and RAB Setup Information) is sent from new SGSN to old SGSN. This message indicates that the target RNC is ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by the MS, i.e. the relocation resource allocation procedure is terminated successfully. RANAP Cause is information from the target RNC to be forwarded to the source RNC. The RAB Setup Information, one information element for each RAB, contains the RNC Tunnel Endpoint Identifier and RNC IP address for data forwarding from source SRNC to target RNC. If the target RNC or the new SGSN failed to allocate resources the RAB Setup Information element contains only NSAPI indicating that the source RNC shall release the resources associated with the NSAPI. The Forward Relocation Response message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.
- 6) The old SGSN continues the relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Command message (RABs to be released, and RABs subject to data forwarding) to the source SRNC. The old SGSN decides the RABs to be subject for data forwarding based on QoS, and those RABs shall be contained in RABs subject to data forwarding. For each RAB subject to data forwarding, the information element shall contain RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The Transport Layer Address and Iu Transport Association is used for forwarding of DL N-PDU from source RNC to target RNC.
- 7) Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data-forwarding timer. When the relocation preparation procedure is terminated successfully and when the source SRNC is ready, the source SRNC shall trigger the execution of relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Commit message (SRNS Contexts) to the target RNC. The purpose of this procedure is to transfer SRNS contexts from the source RNC to the target RNC. SRNS contexts are sent for each concerned RAB and contain the sequence numbers of the GTP-PDUs next to be transmitted in the uplink and downlink directions and the next PDCP sequence numbers that would have been used to send and receive data from the MS. For connections using RLC unacknowledged mode PDCP sequence numbers is not used.

If PDCP does not support lossless relocation, the acknowledged mode SRNS relocation procedures shall be performed as in unacknowledged mode. Hence PDCP sequence numbers shall not be transferred from old RNC to target RNC.
- 8) After having sent the Relocation Commit message, source SRNC begins the forwarding of data for the RABs to be subject for data forwarding. The data forwarding at SRNS relocation shall be carried out through the Iu interface, meaning that the data exchanged between source SRNC and target RNC are duplicated in the source SRNC and routed at IP layer towards the target RNC.
- 9) The target RNC shall send a Relocation Detect message to the new SGSN when the relocation execution trigger is received. For SRNS relocation type "UE not involved", the relocation execution trigger is the reception of the Relocation Commit message from the Iur interface. When the Relocation Detect message is sent, the target RNC shall start SRNC operation.
- 10) After having sent the Relocation Detect message, target SRNC responds to the MS by sending a RNTI Reallocation message. Both messages contain UE information elements and CN information elements. The UE information elements include among others new SRNC identity and S-RNTI. The CN information elements contain among others Location Area Identification and Routeing Area Identification. The procedure shall be coordinated in all Iu signalling connections existing for the MS.

The target SRNC resets and restarts the RLC connections, and exchanges the PDCP sequence numbers (PDCP-SNU, PDCP-SND) between the target SRNC and the MS. PDCP-SND is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence downlink packet to be received in acknowledged mode in the MS per radio bearer, which requires lossless relocation. PDCP-SND confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If PDCP-SND confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. PDCP-SNU confirms all mobile originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If PDCP-SNU confirms reception of packets that were received in the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the MS.

- 11) Upon reception of the Relocation Detect message, the CN may switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request messages (new SGSN Address, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).
- 12) When the MS has reconfigured itself, it sends the RNTI Reallocation Complete message to the target SRNC. From now on the exchange of packets with the MS can start.
- 13) When the target SRNC receives the RNTI Reallocation Complete message, i.e. the new SRNC—ID + S-RNTI are successfully exchanged with the UE by the radio protocols, the target SRNC shall initiate the Relocation Complete procedure by sending the Relocation Complete message to the new SGSN. The purpose of the Relocation Complete procedure is to indicate by the target SRNC the completion of the relocation of the SRNS to the CN. If the user plane has not been switched at Relocation Detect and upon reception of Relocation Complete, the CN shall switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN shall signal to the old SGSN the completion of the SRNS relocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Complete message.
- 14) Upon receiving the Relocation Complete message or if it is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation; the Forward Relocation Complete message, the old SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the source RNC. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the source RNC responds with an Iu Release Complete.
- 15) After the MS has finished the RNTI reallocation procedure and if the new Routeing Area Identification is different from the old one, the MS initiates the Routeing Area Update procedure. See subclause "Location Management Procedures (UMTS Only)". Note that it is only a subset of the RA update procedure that is performed, since the MS is in PMM-CONNECTED mode.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.2.2.2 Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation Procedure

This procedure is only performed for an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN to CN connection point at the UTRAN side from the source SRNC to the target RNC, while performing a hard handover decided by the UTRAN. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the source SRNC, an Intra SGSN SRNS Relocation procedure is performed. If the routeing area is changed, then this procedure is followed by an Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure. The SGSN detects that it is an intra-SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the HLR about the new MS location.

If the target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the source SRNC, an Inter SGSN SRNS Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure.

Figure 39 shows the situation before a Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure when source and target RNC are connected to different SGSNs. Figure 40 shows the situation after the Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure and RA update procedure have been completed. In the case described in Figure 39 and Figure 40 the MS is in MM IDLE state.

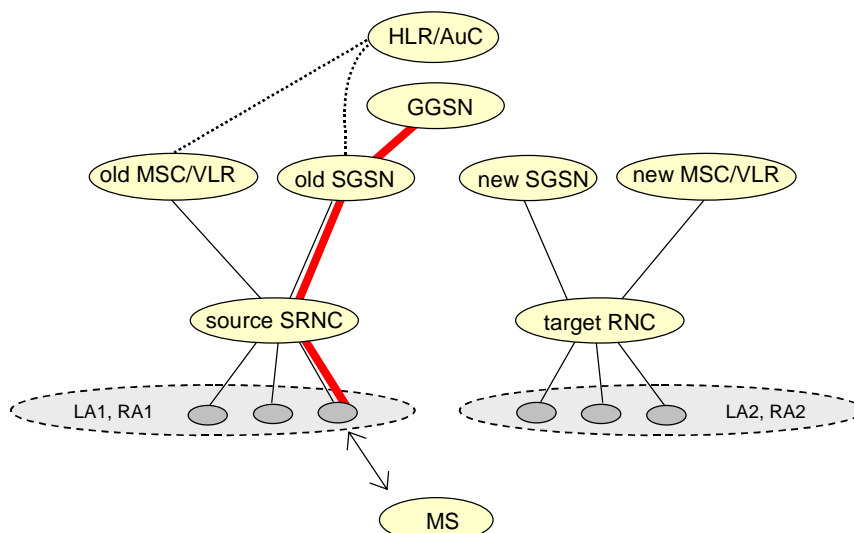


Figure 39: Before Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update

Before the SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update the MS is registered in the old SGSN and in the old MSC/VLR. The source RNC is acting as serving RNC.

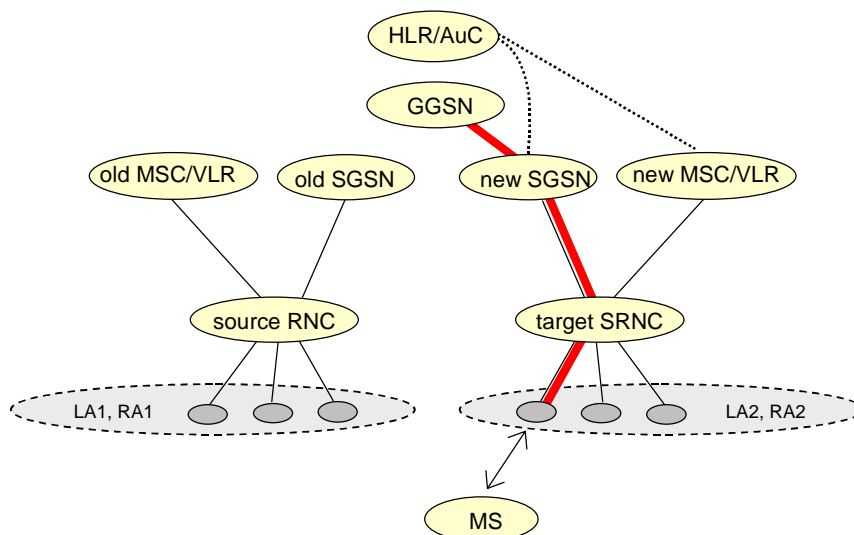


Figure 40: After Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA update, the MS is registered in the new SGSN and in the new MSC/VLR. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the new SGSN and in MM IDLE state towards the new MSC/VLR. The target RNC is acting as serving RNC.

The Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure for the PS domain is illustrated in Figure 41. The sequence is valid for both intra SGSN SRNS relocation and inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

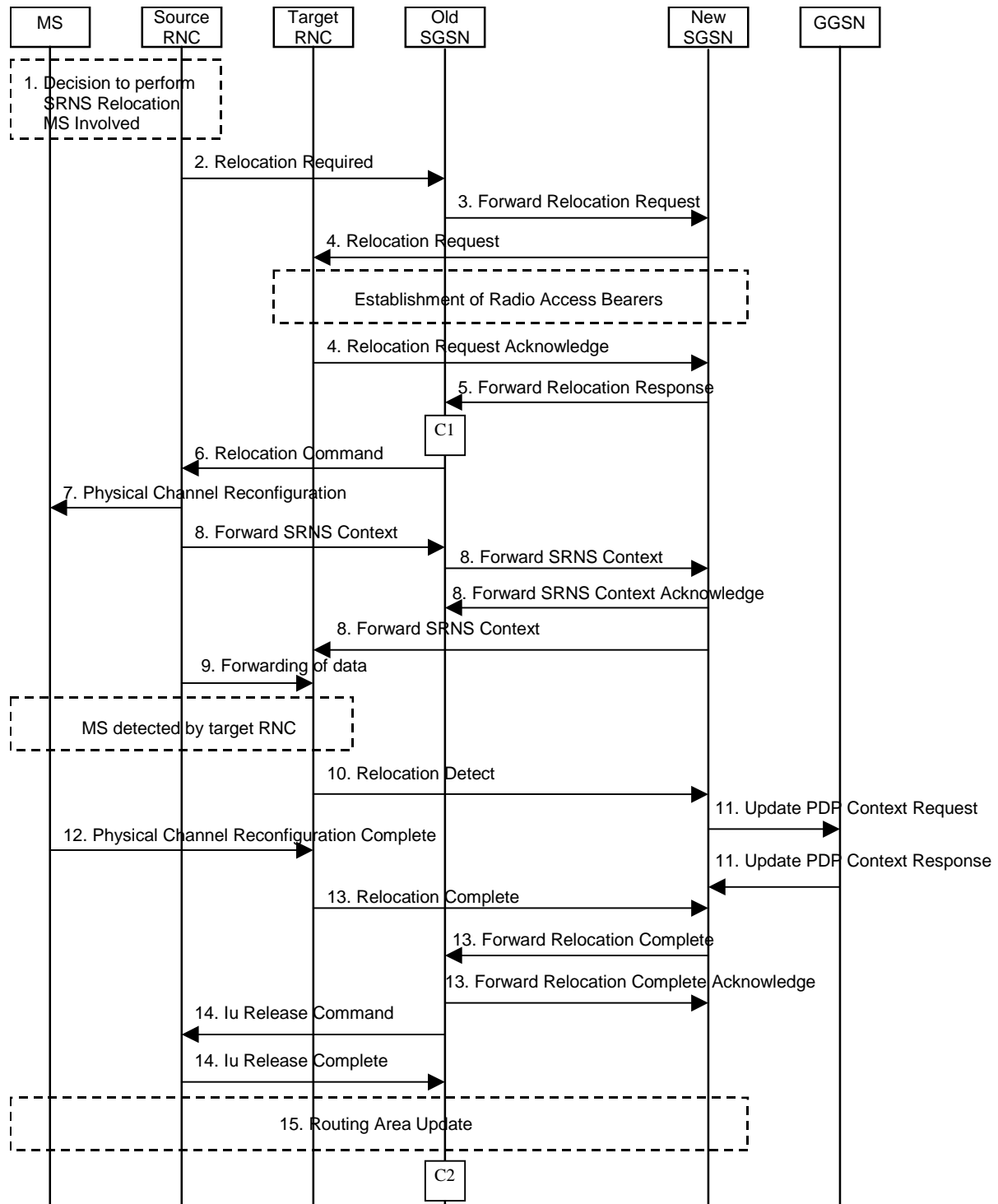


Figure 41: Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation Procedure

- 1) Based on measurement results and knowledge of the UTRAN topology, the source SRNC decides to initiate a combined hard handover and SRNS relocation.
- 2) The source SRNC initiates the relocation preparation procedure by sending a Relocation Required (Relocation Type, Cause, Source ID, Target ID, Source RNC To Target RNC Transparent Container) message to the old SGSN. The source SRNC shall set Relocation Type to "UE Involved". Source To Target RNC Transparent Container includes the necessary information for relocation co-ordination, security functionality and RRC protocol context information (including UE Capabilities).

- 3) The old SGSN determines from the Target ID if the SRNS relocation is intra-SGSN SRNS relocation or inter-SGSN SRNS relocation. In case of inter-SGSN SRNS relocation the old SGSN initiates the relocation resource allocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Request (IMSI, Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Signalling, MM Context, PDP Context, Target Identification, UTRAN Transparent Container, RANAP Cause) message to the new SGSN. At the same time a timer is started on the MM and PDP contexts in the old SGSN (see Routing Area Update procedure in subclause "Location Management Procedures (UMTS Only)"). The Forward Relocation Request message is applicable only in case of inter-SGSN SRNS relocation.
- 4) The new SGSN sends a Relocation Request (Permanent NAS UE Identity, Cause, CN Domain Indicator, Source RNC To Target RNC Transparent Container, RABs To Be Setup) message to the target RNC. For each RAB requested to be established, RABs To Be Setup shall contain information such as RAB ID, RAB parameters, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The RAB ID information element contains the NSAPI value, and the RAB parameters information element gives the QoS profile. The Transport Layer Address is the SGSN Address for user data, and the Iu Transport Association corresponds to Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Data.

After all the necessary resources for accepted RABs including the Iu user plane are successfully allocated, the target RNC shall send the Relocation Request Acknowledge (Target RNC To Source RNC Transparent Container, RABs Setup, RABs Failed To Setup) message to the new SGSN. The transparent container contains all radio-related information that the MS needs for the handover, i.e., a complete RRC message (e.g., Physical Channel Reconfiguration) to be sent transparently via CN and source SRNC to the MS. The target RNC will for each RAB to be setup (defined by an IP Address and a Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) receive both forwarded downstream PDUs from the source SRNC as well as downstream PDUs from the new SGSN.

- 5) When resources for the transmission of user data between target RNC and new SGSN have been allocated and the new SGSN is ready for relocation of SRNS, the Forward Relocation Response (Cause, UTRAN Transparent Container, RANAP Cause, Target RNC Information) message is sent from the new SGSN to the old SGSN. This message indicates that the target RNC is ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by the MS, i.e., the relocation resource allocation procedure is terminated successfully. UTRAN transparent container and RANAP Cause are information from the target RNC to be forwarded to the source RNC. The Target RNC Information, one information element for each RAB to be setup, contains the RNC Tunnel Endpoint Identifier and RNC IP address for data forwarding from source SRNC to target RNC. The Forward Relocation Response message is applicable only in case of inter-SGSN SRNS relocation.
- 6) The old SGSN continues the relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Command (Target RNC To Source RNC Transparent Container, RABs To Be Released, RABs Subject To Data Forwarding) message to the source SRNC. The old SGSN decides the RABs to be subject for data forwarding based on QoS, and those RABs shall be contained in RABs subject to data forwarding. For each RAB subject to data forwarding, the information element shall contain RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. Transport Layer Address and Iu Transport Association is used for forwarding of DL N-PDU from source RNC to target RNC.
- 7) Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data-forwarding timer. When the relocation preparation procedure is terminated successfully and when the source SRNC is ready, then the source SRNC shall trigger the execution of relocation of SRNS by sending to the MS the RRC message provided in the Target RNC to source RNC transparent container, e.g., a Physical Channel Reconfiguration (UE Information Elements, CN Information Elements) message. UE Information Elements include among others new SRNC identity and S-RNTI. CN Information Elements contain among others Location Area Identification and Routing Area Identification.
- 8) The source SRNC continues the execution of relocation of SRNS by sending a Forward SRNS Context (RAB Contexts) message to the target RNC via the old and the new SGSN, which is acknowledged by a Forward SRNS Context Acknowledge message. The purpose of this procedure is to transfer SRNS contexts from the source RNC to the target RNC when handover is made with switching in CN. SRNS contexts are sent for each concerned RAB and contain the sequence numbers of the GTP PDUs next to be transmitted in the uplink and downlink directions and the next PDCP sequence numbers that would have been used to send and receive data from the MS. For connections using RLC unacknowledged mode PDCP sequence numbers is not used.

The target SRNC resets and restarts the RLC connections, and exchanges the PDCP sequence numbers (PDCP-SNU, PDCP-SND) between the target SRNC and the MS. PDCP-SND is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence downlink packet to be received in acknowledged mode in the MS per radio bearer, which requires lossless relocation. PDCP-SND confirms all mobile terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If PDCP-SND confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. PDCP-SNU confirms all mobile originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If PDCP-SNU confirms reception of packets that were received in the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the MS.

- 9) After having sent the Forward SRNS Context message, source SRNC begins the forwarding of data for the RABs to be subject for data forwarding. The data forwarding at SRNS relocation shall be carried out through the Iu interface, meaning that the data exchanged between source SRNC and target RNC are duplicated in the source SRNC and routed at IP layer towards the target RNC.
- 10) The target RNC shall send a Relocation Detect message to the new SGSN when the relocation execution trigger is received. For SRNS relocation type "UE Involved", the relocation execution trigger may be received from the Uu interface; i.e., when target RNC detects the MS on the lower layers. When the Relocation Detect message is sent, the target RNC shall start SRNC operation.
- 11) Upon reception of the Relocation Detect message, the CN may switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (New SGSN Address, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) message.
- 12) When the MS has reconfigured it self, it sends e.g., a Physical Channel Reconfiguration Complete message to the target SRNC. From now on the exchange of packets with the MS can start.
- 13) When the target SRNC receives the Physical Channel Reconfiguration Complete message or the Radio Bearer Release Complete message, i.e. the new SRNC-ID + S-RNTI are successfully exchanged with the UE by the radio protocols, the target SRNC shall initiate Relocation Complete procedure by sending the Relocation Complete message to the new SGSN. The purpose of the Relocation Complete procedure is to indicate by the target SRNC the completion of the relocation of the SRNS to the CN. If the user plane has not been switched at Relocation Detect, the CN shall upon reception of Relocation Complete switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS Relocation is an inter-SGSN SRNS relocation, then the new SGSN signals to the old SGSN the completion of the SRNS relocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Complete message.
- 14) Upon receiving the Relocation Complete message or if it is an inter-SGSN SRNS relocation; the Forward Relocation Complete message, the old SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the source RNC. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the source RNC responds with an Iu Release Complete message.
- 15) After the MS has finished the reconfiguration procedure and if the new Routeing Area Identification is different from the old one, the MS initiates the Routeing Area Update procedure. See subclause "Location Management Procedures (UMTS Only)". Note that it is only a subset of the RA update procedure that is performed, since the MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.2.2.3 Combined Cell / URA Update and SRNS Relocation Procedure

This procedure is only performed for an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state, where the Iur carries control signalling but no user data.

The Combined Cell / URA Update and SRNS Relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN to CN connection point at the UTRAN side from the source SRNC to the target RNC, while performing a cell re-selection in the UTRAN. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the source SRNC, an Intra SGSN SRNS Relocation procedure is performed. If the routing area is changed, the this procedure is followed by an Intra SGSN Routing Area Update procedure. The SGSN detects that it is an intra-SGSN routing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the HLR about the new MS location.

Before the Combined Cell / URA Update and SRNS Relocation and the Routing Area Update the MS is registered in the old SGSN. The source RNC is acting as serving RNC.

After the Combined Cell / URA Update and SRNS Relocation and the Routing Area Update, the MS is registered in the new SGSN. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the new SGSN, and the target RNC is acting as serving RNC.

The Combined Cell / URA Update and SRNS Relocation procedure for the PS domain is illustrated in Figure 42. The sequence is valid for both intra-SGSN SRNS relocation and inter-SGSN SRNS relocation.

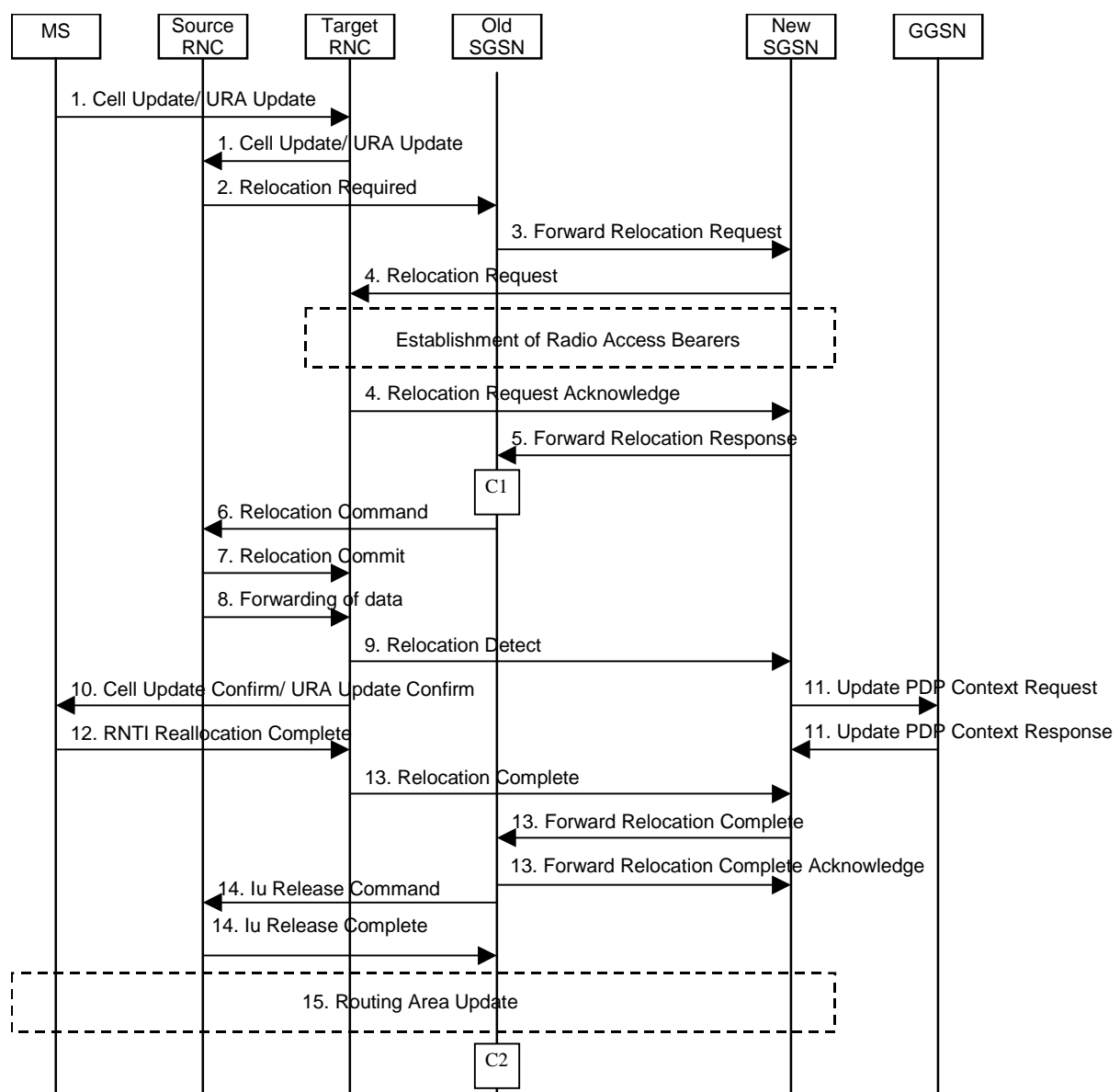


Figure 42: Combined Cell / URA Update and SRNS Relocation Procedure

- 1) The MS sends a Cell Update / URA Update message to the UTRAN, after having made cell re-selection. Upon reception of the message, the target RNC forwards the received message towards the source SRNC via Iur. Source SRNC decides to perform a combined cell / URA update and SRNS relocation towards the target RNC.

- 2) The source SRNC initiates the relocation preparation procedure by sending a Relocation Required message (Relocation Type, Cause, Source ID, Target ID, Source RNC to Target RNC Transparent Container) to the old SGSN. The source SRNC shall set Relocation Type to "UE not involved". Source RNC to Target RNC Transparent Container includes the necessary information for Relocation co-ordination, security functionality, and RRC protocol context information (including UE Capabilities).
- 3) The old SGSN determines from the Target ID if the SRNS Relocation is intra SGSN SRNS relocation or inter SGSN SRNS relocation. In case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation the old SGSN initiates the relocation resource allocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Request (IMSI, Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Signalling, MM Context, PDP Context, Target Identification, UTRAN Transparent Container, RANAP Cause) message to the new SGSN. At the same time a timer is started on the MM and PDP contexts in the old SGSN, see Routing Area Update procedure in subclause "Location Management Procedures (UMTS Only)". The Forward Relocation Request message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.
- 4) The new SGSN sends a Relocation Request message (Permanent NAS UE Identity, Cause, CN Domain Indicator, Source RNC to Target RNC Transparent Container, RABs To Be Setup) to the target RNC. For each RAB requested to be established, RABs To Be Setup shall contain information such as RAB ID, RAB parameters, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The RAB ID information element contains the NSAPI value, and the RAB parameters information element gives the QoS profile. The Transport Layer Address is the SGSN Address for user data, and the Iu Transport Association corresponds to Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Data.

After all necessary resources for accepted RABs including the Iu user plane are successfully allocated, the target RNC shall send the Relocation Request Acknowledge (RABs setup, RABs failed to setup) message to the new SGSN. The target RNC will for each RAB to be setup (defined by an IP Address and a Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) receive both forwarded downstream PDUs from the source SRNC as well as downstream PDUs from the new SGSN.

- 5) When resources for the transmission of user data between target RNC and new SGSN have been allocated and the new SGSN is ready for relocation of SRNS, the Forward Relocation Response message (Cause, RANAP Cause, and Target RNC Information) is sent from new SGSN to old SGSN. This message indicates that the target RNC is ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS, i.e., the relocation resource allocation procedure is terminated successfully. RANAP Cause is information from the target RNC to be forwarded to the source RNC. The RAB Setup Information, one information element for each RAB, contains the RNC Tunnel Endpoint Identifier and RNC IP address for data forwarding from source SRNC to target RNC. If the target RNC or the new SGSN failed to allocate resources the RAB Setup Information element contains only NSAPI indicating that the source RNC shall release the resources associated with the NSAPI. The Forward Relocation Response message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.
- 6) The old SGSN continues the relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Command (RABs to be released, and RABs subject to data forwarding) message to the source SRNC. The old SGSN decides the RABs subject to data forwarding based on QoS, and those RABs shall be contained in RABs subject to data forwarding. For each RAB subject to data forwarding, the information element shall contain RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The Transport Layer Address and Iu Transport Association is used for forwarding of DL N-PDU from source RNC to target RNC.
- 7) Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data-forwarding timer. When the relocation preparation procedure is terminated successfully and when the source SRNC is ready, the source SRNC shall trigger the execution of relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Commit (SRNS Contexts) message to the target RNC. The purpose of this procedure is to transfer SRNS contexts from the source RNC to the target RNC. SRNS contexts are sent for each concerned RAB and contain the sequence numbers of the GTP-PDUs next to be transmitted in the uplink and downlink directions and the next PDCP sequence numbers that would have been used to send and receive data from the MS. For connections using RLC unacknowledged mode PDCP sequence number is not used.

- 8) After having sent the Relocation Commit message, source SRNC begins the forwarding of data for the RABs subject to data forwarding. The data forwarding at SRNS relocation shall be carried out through the Iu interface, meaning that the data exchanged between source SRNC and target RNC are duplicated in the source SRNC and routed at IP layer towards the target RNC.
- 9) The target RNC shall send a Relocation Detect message to the new SGSN when the relocation execution trigger is received. For SRNS relocation type "UE not involved", the relocation execution trigger is the reception of the Relocation Commit message from the Iur interface. When the Relocation Detect message is sent, the target RNC shall start SRNC operation.
- 10) After having sent the Relocation Detect message, target SRNC responds to the MS by sending a Cell Update Confirm / URA Update Confirm message. Both messages contain UE information elements and CN information elements. The UE information elements include among others new SRNC identity and S-RNTI. The CN information elements contain among others Location Area Identification and Routeing Area Identification. The procedure shall be co-ordinated in all Iu signalling connections existing for the MS.
- 11) Upon reception of the Relocation Detect message, the CN may switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request messages (new SGSN Address, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) message.
- 12) When the MS has reconfigured itself, it sends the RNTI Reallocation Complete message to the target SRNC.
- 13) When the target SRNC receives the RNTI Reallocation Complete message, i.e. the new SRNC-ID + S-RNTI are successfully exchanged with the UE by the radio protocols, the target SRNC shall initiate the Relocation Complete procedure by sending the Relocation Complete message to the new SGSN. The purpose of the Relocation Complete procedure is to indicate by the target SRNC the completion of the relocation of the SRNS to the CN. If the user plane has not been switched at Relocation Detect, the CN shall upon reception of Relocation Complete switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN signals to the old SGSN the completion of the SRNS relocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Complete message.
- 14) Upon receiving the Relocation Complete message or if it is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation; the Forward Relocation Complete message, the old SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the source RNC. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the source RNC responds with an Iu Release Complete.
- 15) After the MS has finished the Cell / URA update and RNTI reallocation procedure and if the new Routeing Area Identification is different from the old one, the MS initiates the Routeing Area Update procedure. See subclause "Location Management Procedures (UMTS Only)". Note that it is only a subset of the RA update procedure that is performed, since the MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.3 Periodic RA and LA Updates

All GPRS-attached MSs, except GSM MSs in class-B mode of operation engaged in CS communication, shall perform periodic RA updates. MSs that are IMSI-attached and not GPRS-attached shall perform periodic LA updates. Periodic RA updates are equivalent to intra SGSN routing area updates as described in subclause "Intra SGSN Routing Area Update", with Update Type indicating periodic RA update. For MSs that are both IMSI-attached and GPRS-attached, the periodic updates depend on the mode of operation of the network:

- If the network operates in mode I, periodic RA updates shall be performed, and periodic LA updates shall not be performed. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall disable implicit detach for GPRS-attached MSs and instead rely on the SGSN to receive periodic RA updates. If periodic RA updates are not received in the SGSN and the SGSN detaches the MS, the SGSN shall notify the MSC/VLR by sending an IMSI Detach Indication message.
- If the network operates in mode II or mode III, both periodic RA updates and periodic LA updates shall be performed independently. RA updates are performed towards the SGSN, and LA updates are performed towards the MSC/VLR.

In GSM, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when an LLC PDU is sent since all sent LLC PDUs set the MM context state to READY. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY.

In UMTS, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when the MM context enters the PMM-CONNECTED state. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to PMM-IDLE state.

If the MS could not successfully complete the periodic RA update procedure after a retry scheme while the MS was in PS coverage, then the MS shall wait a backoff time equal to the periodic LA update timer broadcast by the network before re-starting the periodic RA update procedure.

6.10 Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Function (GSM Only)

Tunnelling of Messages (TOM) is an optional protocol layer that uses the LLC unacknowledged mode procedures to tunnel messages between the MS and the SGSN (see GSM 04.64). TOM uses two LLC SAPs for communication between the MS and the SGSN; one for high-priority messages and one for low-priority messages. A network that supports TIA/EIA-136 [49] shall support the TOM protocol and the Gs interface.

Upon receiving a non-GSM signalling message from an MS via the TOM protocol, the SGSN forwards the message to a non-GSM MSC/VLR using the BSSAP+ protocol (see GSM 09.18). The specific Gs interface used by the SGSN is determined by the:

- RAI associated with the current location of the MS; and
- information in the TOM protocol header.

Upon receiving a non-GSM signalling message from a non-GSM MSC/VLR via the BSSAP+ protocol, the SGSN forwards the message to a specific MS using the TOM protocol. The specific MS is determined by the SGSN based on the content of the BSSAP+ header.

The control plane between an MS and a non-GSM MSC/VLR that uses tunnelling procedures for non-GSM signalling is shown in Figure 43:

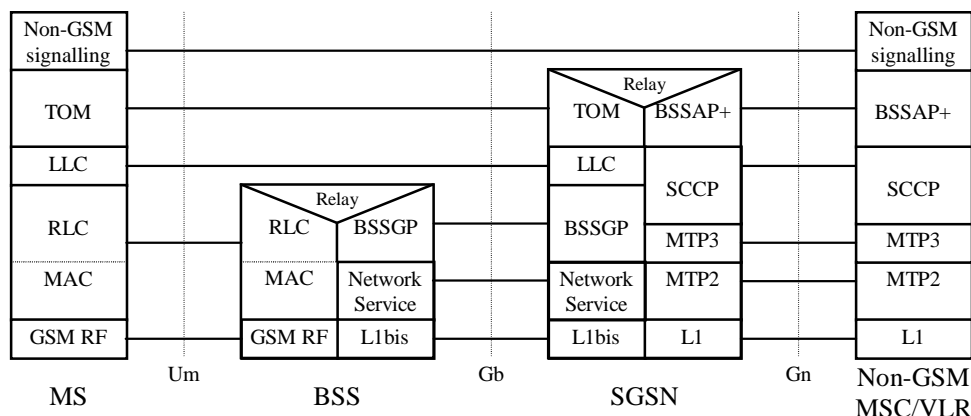


Figure 43: Control Plane MS - Non-GSM MSC/VLR

6.10.1 Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

The Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages procedure is illustrated in Figure 44.

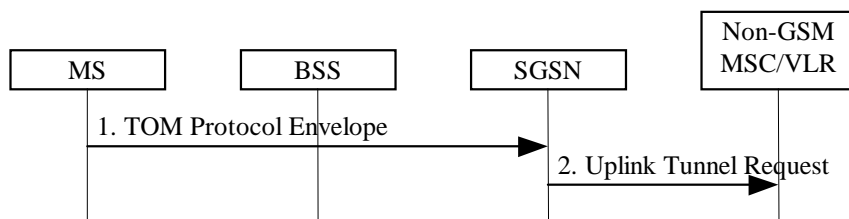


Figure 44: Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

- 1) The MS sends a TOM Protocol Envelope (Non-GSM Signalling Message) to the SGSN either in ciphered or clear mode. The TOM protocol header contains information about the application using the TOM facility and any other TOM Protocol Discriminator-specific information. The TOM Protocol Envelope is received on one of the two LLC SAPs used for tunnelling of messages.
- 2) The SGSN identifies the non-GSM MSC/VLR to which to forward the non-GSM signalling message. It then sends a BSSAP+ Uplink Tunnel Request (IMSI, SGSN Address, TOM Priority, Cipher, Non-GSM Signalling Message) message to the identified non-GSM MSC/VLR. The Cipher parameter is set to cipher if the TOM Protocol Envelope was received by the LLC layer in ciphered form, otherwise it is set to not cipher. TOM Priority is set to high priority if the TOM Protocol Envelope was received on the high-priority LLC SAP, otherwise it is set to low priority.

6.10.2 Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

The Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages procedure is illustrated in Figure 45.

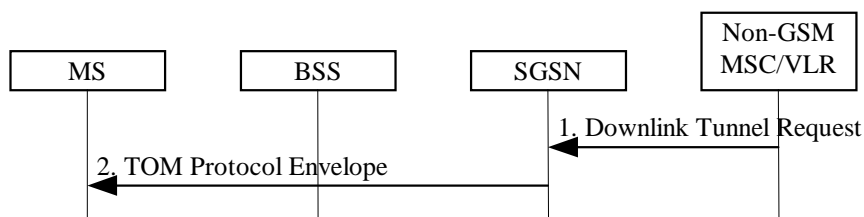


Figure 45: Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

- 1) The non-GSM MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Downlink Tunnel Request (IMSI, VLR Address, TOM Priority, Cipher, Non-GSM Signalling Message) message to the SGSN associated with the MS. TOM Priority indicates whether the SGSN shall select the high-priority or low-priority LLC SAP when forwarding the non-GSM signalling message to the MS. Cipher indicates whether or not the SGSN shall cipher the non-GSM signalling message before forwarding it to the MS.
- 2) The SGSN sends a TOM Protocol Envelope (Non-GSM Signalling Message) to the MS using the selected LLC SAP.

6.11 Subscriber Management Function

The Subscriber Management function provides a mechanism to inform the nodes about changes of the PS subscription data for a specific PS subscriber.

6.11.1 Subscriber Management Procedures

Whenever the PS subscription data is changed for a PS subscriber in the HLR, and the changes affect the PS subscription data stored in the SGSN, then the SGSN node shall be informed about these changes by means of the following procedures:

- Insert Subscriber Data procedure, used to add or modify PS subscription data in the SGSN; or
- Delete Subscriber Data procedure, used to remove PS subscription data in the SGSN.

6.11.1.1 Insert Subscriber Data Procedure

In addition to the insertion and modification of general PS subscription data for a PS subscriber, see GSM 09.02, the HLR may request the insertion or modification of one or several new or existing PDP contexts in the SGSN. It should be noted that the modification may trigger a PDP Context Modification procedure as described in subclause "Modification Procedures". In particular, the following PDP context parameters may be modified by the HLR:

- QoS Profile Subscribed; and
- VPLMN Address Allowed.

The Insert Subscriber Data procedure is illustrated in Figure 46.

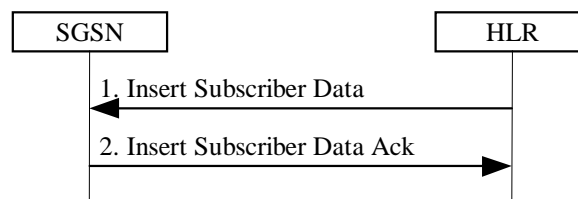


Figure 46: Insert Subscriber Data Procedure

- 1) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, PS Subscription Data) message to the SGSN.
- 2) The SGSN updates its PS subscription data and acknowledges the Insert Subscriber Data message by returning an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message. For each PDP context that is included in PS Subscription Data the SGSN shall check whether it is a new, an active, or an inactive PDP context:
 - For a new or inactive PDP context, no further action is required except storage in the SGSN.
 - For an active PDP context, the SGSN shall in addition compare the new QoS Subscribed with QoS Negotiated and shall, if necessary, initiate a PDP Context Modification procedure as described in subclause "Modification Procedures". Furthermore, if VPLMN Address Allowed is changed, the SGSN shall, if necessary (e.g., if the PDP context is currently routed via a GGSN in the VPLMN and VPLMN Address Allowed is changed to not allowed), initiate a PDP Context Deactivation procedure as explained in subclause "Deactivation Procedures".

6.11.1.2 Delete Subscriber Data Procedure

In addition to the deletion of general PS subscription data for a subscriber, see GSM 09.02, the HLR may request the deletion of one or several PDP contexts from the SGSN.

The Delete Subscriber Data procedure is illustrated in Figure 47.

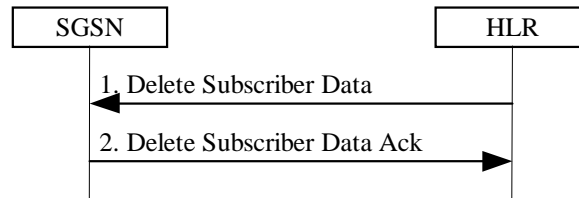


Figure 47: Delete Subscriber Data Procedure

- 1) The HLR sends a Delete Subscriber Data (IMSI, PDP Context Identifiers List) message to the SGSN.
- 2) The SGSN acknowledges the Delete Subscriber Data message by returning a Delete Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message. For each PDP context identifier included in PDP Context Identifiers List, the SGSN shall check whether it belongs to an active or an inactive PDP context:
 - For an inactive PDP context no further action is required except deletion of the PDP context.
 - For an active PDP context, the SGSN shall initiate the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure as explained in subclause "Deactivation Procedures" before the PDP context is deleted.

6.12 Service Request Procedure (UMTS Only)

The Service Request procedure is used by a 3G-MS in PMM-IDLE state to request the establishment of a secure connection to a 3G-SGSN. The MS in PMM-IDLE state initiates this procedure in order to send uplink signalling messages (e.g., Activate PDP Context Request), user data, or as paging response. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request resource reservation for active PDP contexts.

6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signalling connection for the upper layer signalling or for the resource reservation for active PDP context(s). After receiving the Service Request message the 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signalling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, to the 3G-SGSN, or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

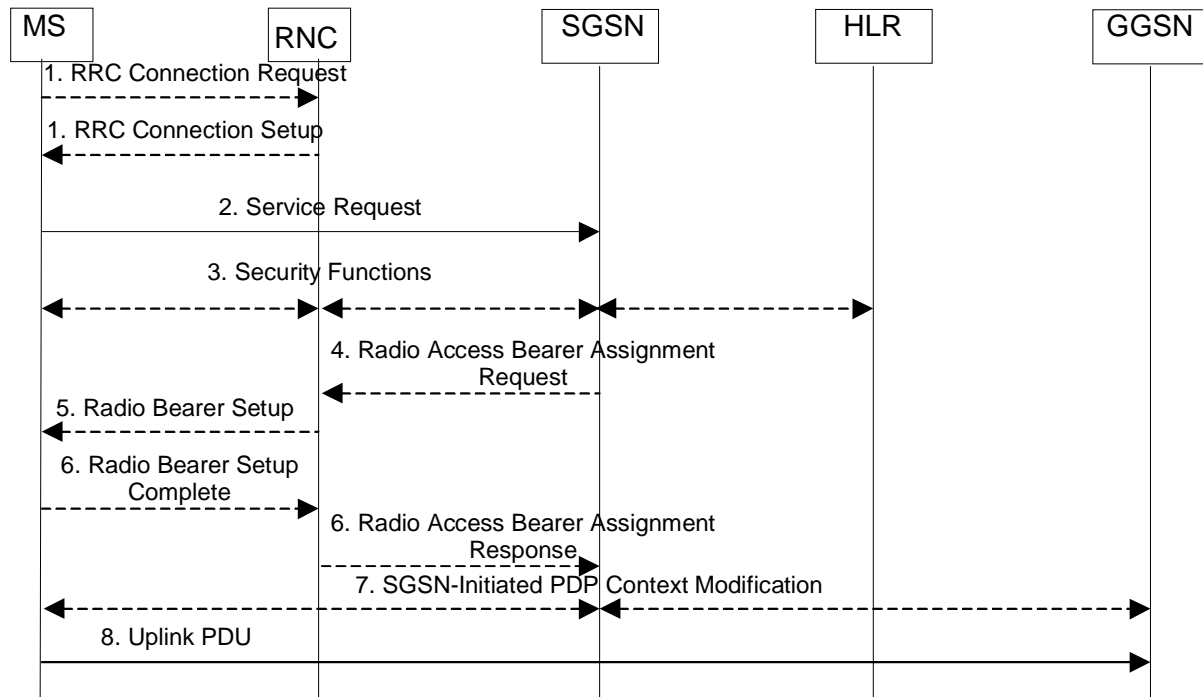


Figure 48: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

- 1) The MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.
- 2) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

If Service Type indicates Data then a signalling connection is established between the MS and the SGSN, and resources for active PDP context(s) are allocated, i.e., RAB establishment for the activated PDP context(s).

If Service Type indicates Signalling then the signalling connection is established between the MS and the SGSN for sending upper-layer signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for active PDP context(s) are not allocated.
- 3) The SGSN shall perform the security functions if the service request was initiated by an MS in PMM-IDLE state.
- 4) In case Service Type indicates Data, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPIRAB ID(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context.
- 5) The RNC indicates to the MS the new Radio Bearer Identity established and the corresponding RAB ID with the RRC radio bearer set up procedure.
- 6) SRNC responds with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (RAB ID(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface. If the RNC returns a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response message with a cause indicating that the requested QoS profile(s) can not be provided, e.g., "Requested Maximum Bit Rate not Available", then the SGSN may send a new Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request message with different QoS profile(s). The number of re-attempts, if any, as well as how the new QoS profile(s) values are determined is implementation dependent.
- 7) For each RAB re-established with a modified QoS profile, the SGSN initiates a PDP Context Modification procedure to inform the MS and the GGSN of the new negotiated QoS profile for the corresponding PDP context.
- 8) The MS sends the uplink packet.

For Service Type = Signalling, the MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message.

For Service Type = Data, the MS knows that the Service Request was successfully received when the MS receives the Radio Bearer Setup message from the RNC.

For any Service Type, in case the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the MS with an appropriate cause value.

For Service Type = Data, in case the SGSN fails to re-establish RAB(s) for the PDP context(s), the SGSN determines if an SM procedure, such as SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification or PDP Context Deactivation, should be initiated. The appropriate action depends on the QoS profile of the PDP context and is an operator choice.

6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for an MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the MS.

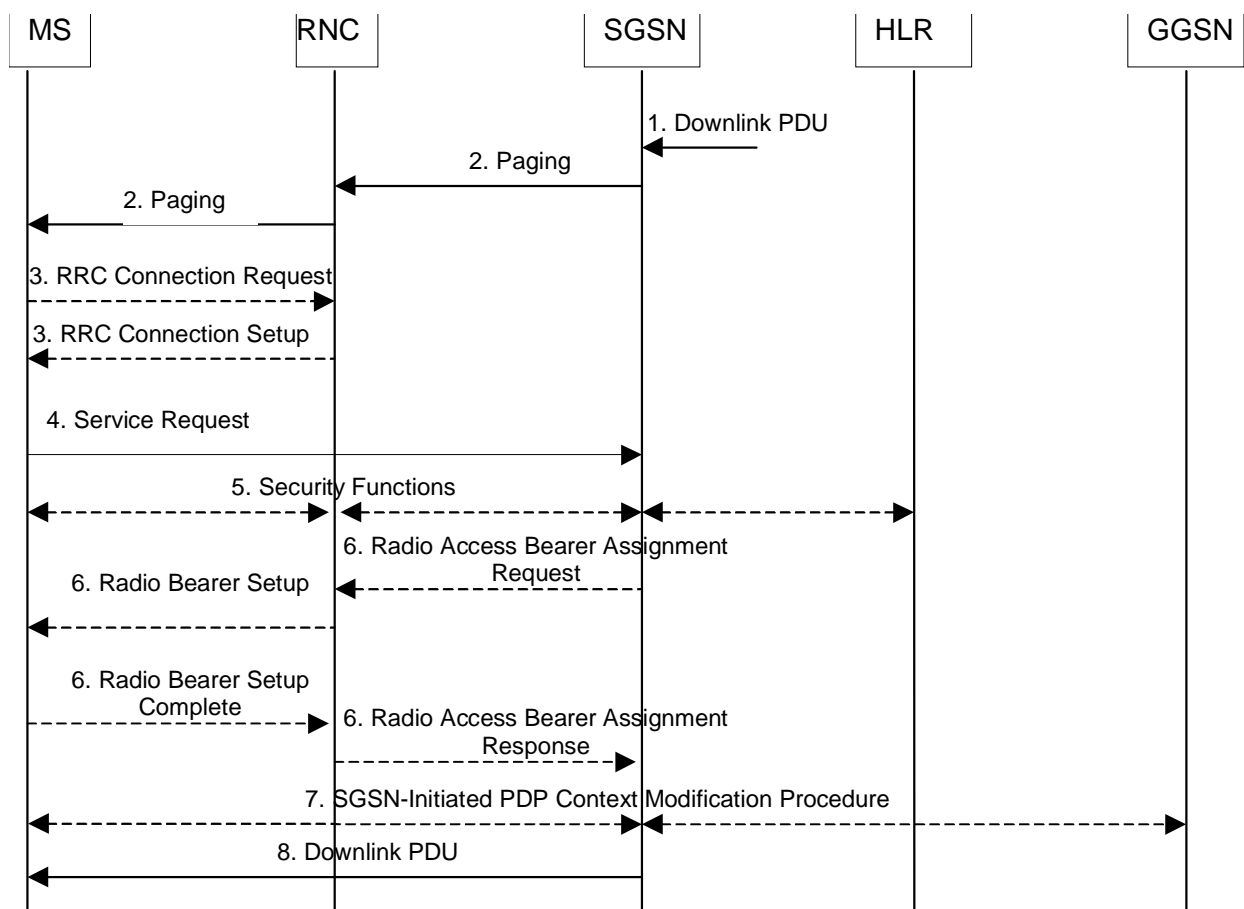


Figure 49: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

- 1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in PMM-IDLE state.
- 2) The SGSN sends a Paging message to the RNC. The RNC pages the MS by sending a Paging message to the MS. See subclause "PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN without RRC Connection for CS" for details.
- 3) The MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.
- 4) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation or MT SMS).
- 5) The SGSN shall perform the security mode procedure.

- 6) If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (RAB ID(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Bearer Setup (RAB ID(s)) to the MS. The MS responds by returning a Radio Bearer Setup Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (RAB ID(s), TEID(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the MS. If the RNC returns a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response message with a cause indicating that the requested QoS profile(s) can not be provided, e.g., "Requested Maximum Bit Rate not Available", then the SGSN may send a new Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request message with different QoS profile(s). The number of re-attempts, if any, as well as how the new QoS profile(s) values are determined is implementation dependent.
- 7) For each RAB re-established with a modified QoS profile, the SGSN initiates a PDP Context Modification procedure to inform the MS and the GGSN of the new negotiated QoS profile for the corresponding PDP context.
- 8) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

For Service Type = Page Response, the MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message.

In the case the SGSN fails to re-establish RAB(s) for the PDP context(s), the SGSN determines if an SM procedure, such as SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification or PDP Context Deactivation, should be initiated. The appropriate action depends on the QoS profile of the PDP context and is an operator choice.

6.13 UMTS - GSM Intersystem Change

The UMTS - GSM intersystem change procedures may be supported for network elements conforming to GSM releases 97, 98, and 99, and to UMTS release 99. At intersystem change release 99 network elements shall use GTP release 97 or 98 on the Gn interface when interworking with release 97 or 98 network elements, respectively.

An intersystem change from UMTS to GSM or GSM to UMTS takes place when an MS supporting both UMTS and GSM changes the radio access technology. A prerequisite for an intersystem change is that the MS is GPRS-attached. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem change.

6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change

An SGSN that supports both the Gb and Iu-PS interfaces may support an intra SGSN intersystem change if the radio access technology nodes serving the MS before and after the intersystem change are both served by this SGSN.

6.13.1.1 UMTS to GSM Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from UMTS to GSM takes place when an MS changes from UTRAN to GSM radio access. Depending on the PMM state before the intersystem change and whether the RA is changed or not, one of the following procedures is initiated by the MS:

- When an MS in PMM-IDLE state changes to the GSM radio access without changing the RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".
- When an MS in PMM-IDLE state changes to the GSM radio access and the RA changes, the MS shall initiate the GPRS RA update procedure, see subclause "Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update".
- When an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state changes to the GSM radio access, the MS shall initiate the GPRS RA update procedure independent of whether the RA has changed or not. The RA update procedure is either combined RA / LA update or only RA update.

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see 3G TS 23.122), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

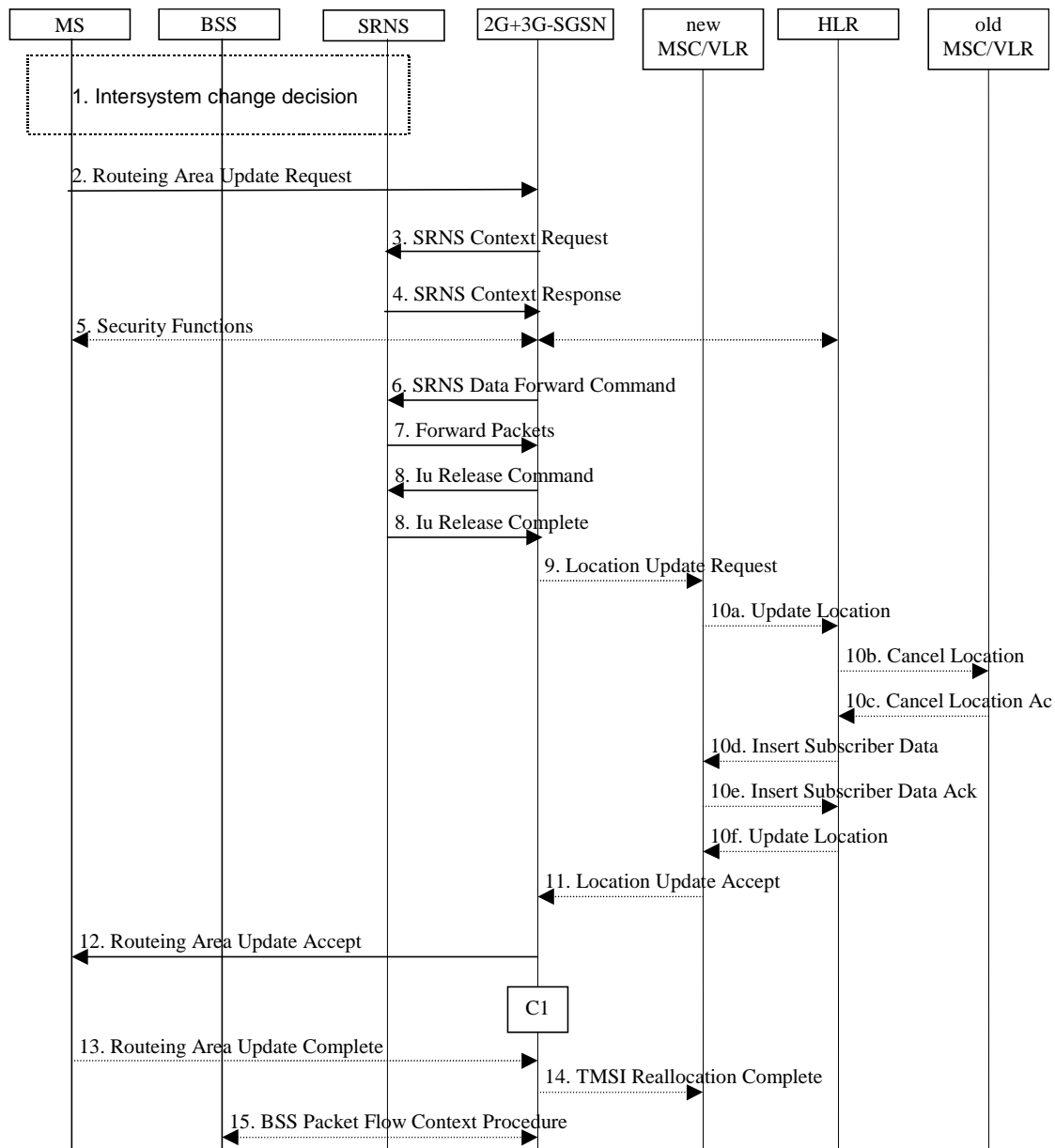


Figure 50: UMTS to GSM Intra SGSN Change

- 1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GSM radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.
- 2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or combined RA / LA update or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attached requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN.
- 3) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS and stops transmission of GTP PDUs to the SRNS.

- 4) The SRNS responds with an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, PDCP-SNUs) message. The GTP sequence numbers are included for each PDP context indicating the next in-sequence downlink PDU to be sent to the MS and the next in-sequence GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink PDCP sequence number (PDCP-SNU). PDCP-SNU is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence uplink packet to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS for each radio bearer, which requires lossless relocation. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the eight most significant bits of the passed PDCP sequence numbers, thus converting them to SDCP N-PDU numbers of the respective 2G GPRS PDP contexts.
- 5) Security functions may be executed.
- 6) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Data Forward Command (RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, Iu Transport Association) message to the SRNS. This informs the SRNS that the 2G+3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets. Upon reception of SRNS Data Forward Command message from the 2G+3G-SGSN the SRNS shall start the data-forwarding timer.
- 7) The transmitted but not acknowledged PDCP-PDUs together with the downlink PDCP sequence number and the buffered downlink GTP PDUs are tunnelled back to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the eight most significant bits of the PDCP sequence numbers accompanying the received N-PDUs before sending them to the MS.
- 8) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. When the RNC data forwarding timer has expired the SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.
- 9) If the association has to be established i.e., if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routing area update, then the 2G+3G-SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI by the 2G+3G-SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the 2G+3G-SGSN by storing SGSN Number.
- 10) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):
 - a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.
 - b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.
 - c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
 - d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.
 - e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).
 - f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.
- 11) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the 2G+3G-SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.
- 12) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A logical link is established between the new 2G+3G-SGSN and the MS. The establishment procedure is initiated by 2G+3G-SGSN. A Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SNU)) message is returned to the MS. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

13) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SND) contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU Number from PDCP-SND by stripping off the eight most significant bits. PDCP-SND is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence downlink packet to be received in acknowledged mode in the MS per radio bearer, which requires lossless handover.

14) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

15) The 2G+3G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.2 GSM to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GSM to UMTS takes place when a GPRS-attached MS changes from GSM radio access to UTRAN. Depending on the GPRS mobility management state before the intersystem change and whether the RA is changed or not one of the following procedures is initiated by the MS:

- When an MS in STANDBY state changes to UTRAN inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".
- When an MS in STANDBY state changes to UTRAN and the RA changes, the MS shall initiate the UMTS RA update procedure, see subclause "Routeing Area Update Procedure".
- When an MS in READY state changes to UTRAN independent of whether the RA has changed or not, the MS shall initiate the UMTS RA update procedure and afterwards initiate the RABs by the Service Request procedure, see subclause "Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure". The RA update procedure is either combined RA / LA update or only RA update.

If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedure. This concerns only idle mode (see 3G TS 23.122), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

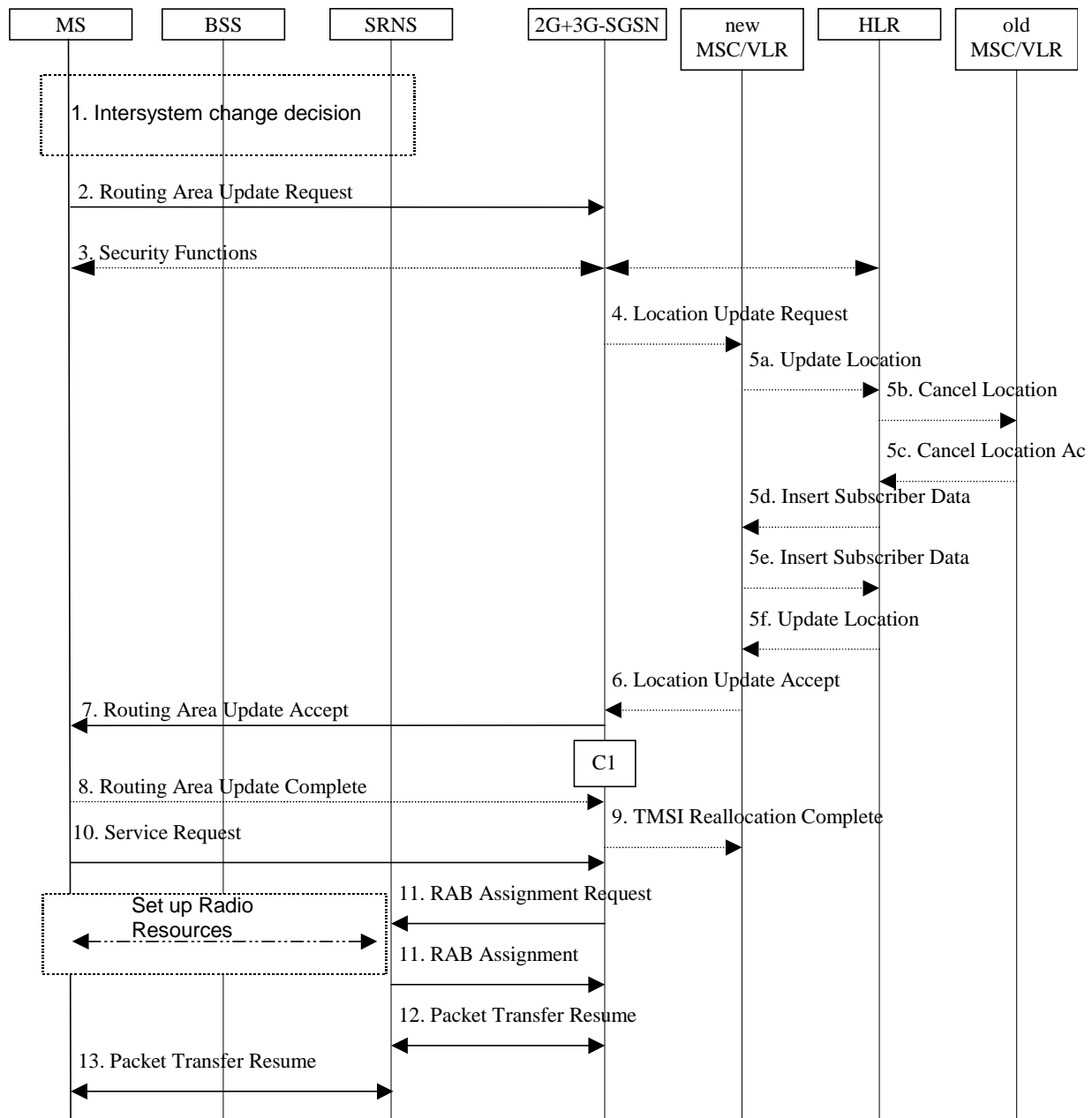


Figure 51: GSM to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

- 1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.
- 2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or combined RA / LA update or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.
- 3) Security functions may be executed.
- 4) If the association has to be established i.e., if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routing area update, then the 2G+3G-SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI by the 2G+3G-SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the 2G+3G-SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

- 5) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):
 - a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.
 - b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.
 - c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
 - d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.
 - e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).
 - f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.
- 6) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the 2G+3G-SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.
- 7) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.
- 8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.
- 9) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.
- 10) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling.
- 11) The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (RAB ID(s), QoS Profile(s), GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, PDCP-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The PDCP sequence numbers shall be derived from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (PDCP-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (PDCP-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

NOTE: The NSAPI value is carried in the RAB ID IE.

- 12) Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

- 13) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.3 Selective RA Update

The MS shall use the following procedures when in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state.

Note that upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall carry out the periodic routing area update procedure.

6.13.1.3.1 Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission

In STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state the MS shall not perform an RA update procedure until uplink data or signalling information is to be sent from the MS.

If the MS is in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in GPRS, or for example sending of a Service Request message in UMTS.

If the MS is in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, the RA update procedure shall be performed before the sending of data or signalling. The RA update procedure needs not be performed if the signalling message is a power-off detach.

6.13.1.3.2 Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission

If the 2G+3G-SGSN receives data for an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state, then the SGSN shall page in the RA where the MS is located. This may include both 2G and 3G cells.

If the MS receives this page in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in a GSM cell or for example sending of a Service Request message in a UMTS cell.

If the MS receives this page in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the RA update procedure shall be performed. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall accept this RAU as a valid response.

6.13.2 Inter SGSN Intersystem Change

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GSM Inter SGSN Change

An inter SGSN intersystem change from UMTS to GSM takes place when an MS in PMM-IDLE or PMM-CONNECTED state changes from UTRAN to GSM radio access and the GSM radio access node serving the MS is served by a different SGSN. In this case the RA changes. Therefore, the MS shall initiate a GSM RA update procedure. The RA update procedure is either combined RA / LA update or only RA update, these RA update cases are illustrated in Figure 52.

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routing Area Update Request indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see 3G TS 23.122), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

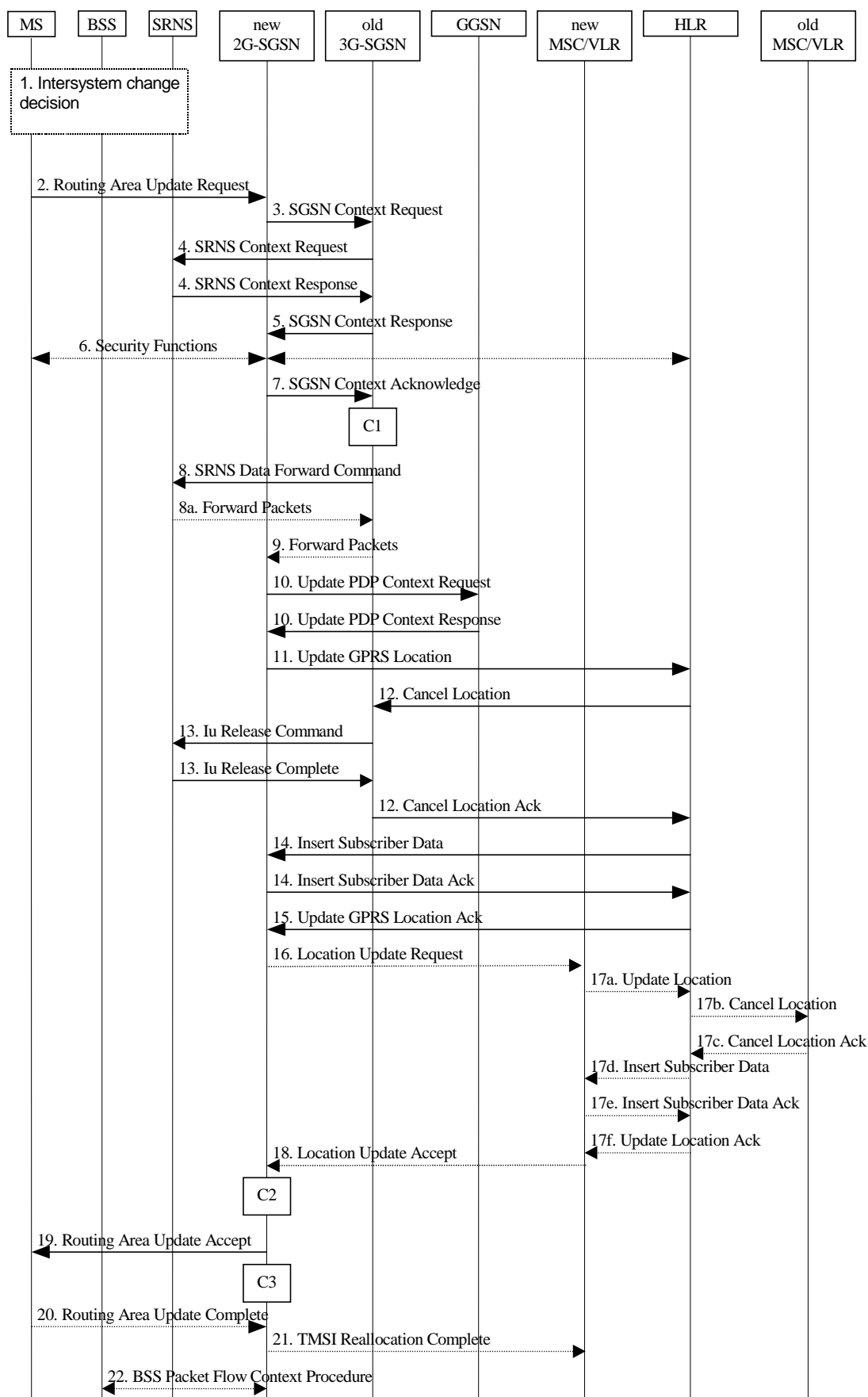


Figure 52: UMTS to GSM Inter SGSN Change

- 1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GSM radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

- 2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the new 2G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G-SGSN.
- 3) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) message to the old 3G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN starts a timer. If the MS is not known in the old 3G-SGSN, the old 3G-SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.
- 4) If the MS is PMM-CONNECTED the old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and returns an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, PDCP-SNUs) message. The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the next in-sequence GTP sequence number to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink PDCP sequence number (PDCP-SNU). PDCP-SNU shall be the next in-sequence PDCP sequence number expected from the MS (per each active radio bearer). The 3G-SGSN shall strip off the eight most significant bits of the passed PDCP sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDP N-PDU numbers.
- 5) The old 3G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. For each PDP context the old 3G-SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next downlink GTP sequence number for the next in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDP Send N-PDU Number (the value is 0) for the next in-sequence downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDP Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SNU) for the next in-sequence uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.
- 6) Security functions may be executed.
- 7) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G-SGSN. This informs the old 3G-SGSN that the new 2G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.
- 8) If the MS is PMM-CONNECTED the old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Data Forward Command (RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, Iu Transport Association) message to the SRNS. The SRNS shall start tunnelling the partly transmitted and the transmitted but not acknowledged PDCP-PDUs together with the PDCP downlink sequence number (the eight most significant bits shall be stripped off), and start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered GTP PDUs to the old 3G-SGSN. Upon reception of SRNS Data Forward Command message from the 3G-SGSN the SRNS shall start the data-forwarding timer.
- 9) The old 3G-SGSN tunnels the GTP PDUs to the new 2G-SGSN. The sequence numbers (= converted PDCP sequence numbers) shall not be modified in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.
- 10) The new 2G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.
- 11) The new 2G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.
- 12) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) message to the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message. The old 3G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running then the MM and PDP contexts shall be removed when the timer expires.
- 13) When the MS is PMM-CONNECTED the old 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

- 14) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN constructs an MM context and PDP contexts for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.
- 15) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 2G-SGSN.
- 16) If the association has to be established i.e., if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routing area update, then the new 2G-SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI by the 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 14). The VLR creates or updates the association with the 2G-SGSN by storing SGSN Number.
- 17) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):
 - a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.
 - b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.
 - c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
 - d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.
 - e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).
 - f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.
- 18) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the 2G-SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.
- 19) The new 2G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G-SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G-SGSN and the MS. The establishment procedure is initiated by 2G-SGSN. The new 2G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SNU)) message. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.
- 20) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SND)) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU number from PDCP-SND by stripping off the eight most significant bits. PDCP-SND is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence downlink packet to be received in acknowledged mode in the MS per radio bearer, which requires lossless handover.
- 21) The new 2G-SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.
- 22) The 2G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

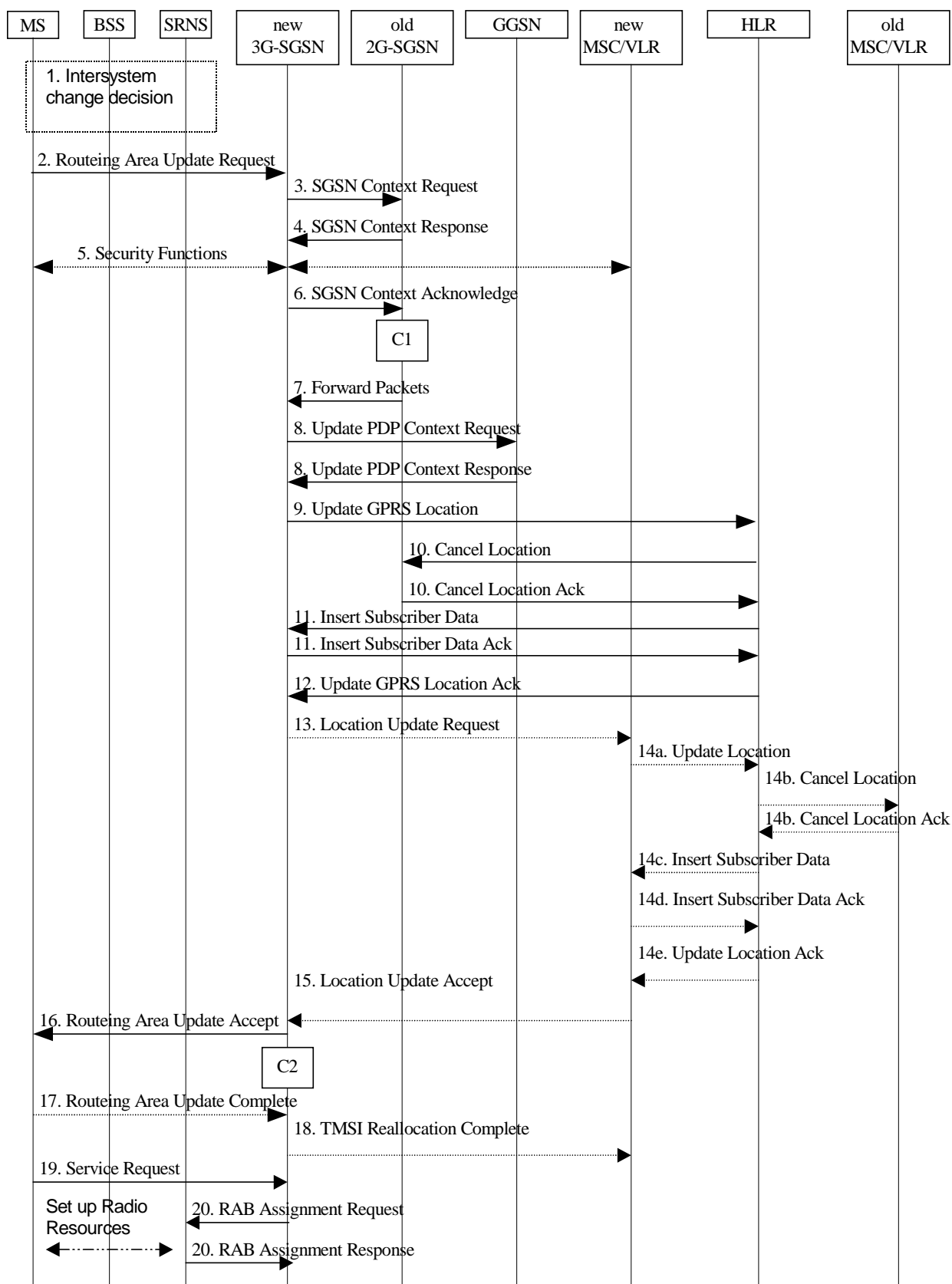
For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

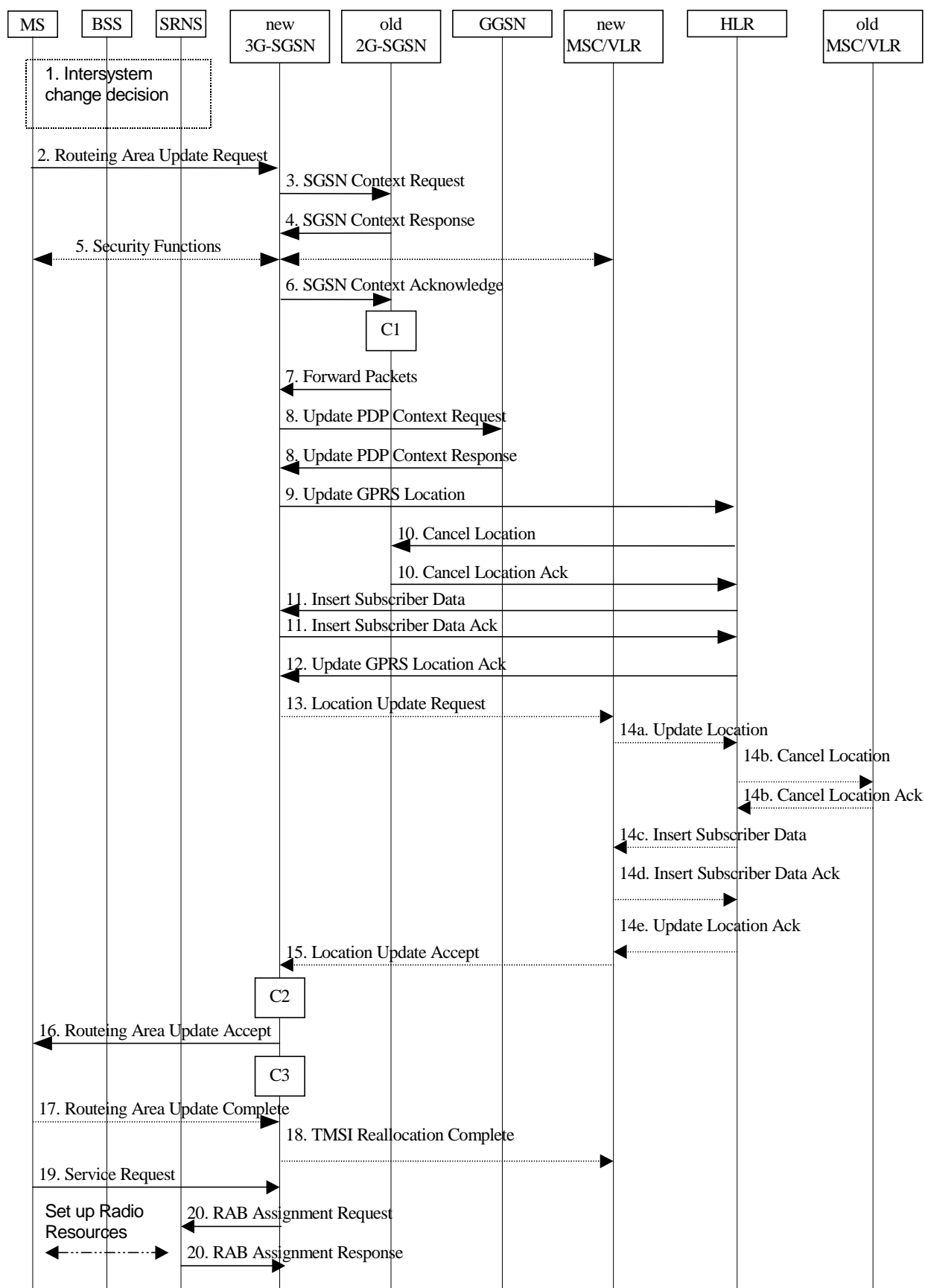
- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routing-Area-Update-Session.
- C3) CAMEL-GPRS-Routing-Area-Update-Context.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GSM to UMTS takes place when a GPRS-attached MS changes from GSM radio access to UTRAN and the UTRAN node serving the MS is served by a different SGSN. In this case the RA changes. Therefore, the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The RA update procedure is either combined RA / LA update or only RA update, these RA update cases are illustrated in Figure 53.

If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures. This concerns only idle mode (see 3G TS 23.122), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.



**Figure 53: GSM to UMTS Inter SGSN Change**

- 1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

- 2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The SRNC shall add the Routeing Area Identity including the RAC and LAC of the area where the MS is located before forwarding the message to the 3G-SGSN. This RA identity corresponds to the RAI in the MM system information sent by the SRNC to the MS.
- 3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.
- 4) The old 2G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SMDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SMDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G-SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface.
- 5) Security functions may be executed.
- 6) The new 3G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G-SGSN. This informs the old 2G-SGSN that the new 3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.
- 7) The old 2G-SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G-SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G-SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G-SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.
- 8) The new 3G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.
- 9) The new 3G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.
- 10) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the old 2G-SGSN. The old 2G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.
- 11) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.
- 12) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 3G-SGSN.
- 13) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI by the 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 12). The VLR creates or updates the association with the 3G-SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

- 14) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):
- a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.
 - b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.
 - c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).
 - d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.
 - e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).
 - f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.
- 15) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the 3G-SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.
- 16) The new 3G-SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G-SGSN rejects the routing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The new 3G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature) message.
- 17) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.
- 18) The new 3G-SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.
- 19) If the MS was in GPRS MM state READY it sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling.
- 20) If the MS has send the Service Request the new 3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (RAB ID(s), QoS Profile(s), GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, PDCP-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The PDCP sequence numbers shall be derived from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (PDCP-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (PDCP-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunneled from the SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the PDCP-SNDs received from the MS. Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the PDCP-SNUs received from the SRNS. Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

NOTE: The NSAPI value is carried in the RAB ID IE.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update-Session.
- C3) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update-Context.

6.14 Classmark Handling

To support efficient radio interface usage in GPRS, the MS classmark is handled differently for SGSN-based services than for MSC-based services. In particular, the classmark information is sent in MM and UMTS RRC messages to the network and stored in the network as long as the MS is attached, avoiding redundant classmark retransmissions over the radio interface. This is sometimes called the "idle-mode classmark" principle.

In order to allow introduction of new radio access technologies in the future, the MS classmark is split into two distinct and independent information elements, the radio access classmark, and the MS network capability. The radio access classmark is split into two information elements, the MS radio access capability (GSM) and the UE capability (UMTS). The MS network capability IE shall be common for GSM and UMTS.

6.14.1 Radio Access Classmark

MS shall send the MS radio access capability in GPRS Attach Request message to SGSN regardless, if the MS is about to attach to GSM, or to UMTS network, as defined in 3G TS 24.008.

6.14.1.1 MS Radio Access Capability (GSM Only)

The MS radio access capability information element contains the GSM radio capabilities of the MS (e.g., multislot capability, power class), and more generally all the information that should be known by the BSS in order to handle radio resources for that MS.

The MS radio access capability is a container for a multiplicity of radio access technology-dependent information, i.e., within the MS radio access capability there are independent sub-fields for various technologies such as GSM 900 and GSM 1800. The coding shall allow a BSS to extract only the sub-fields relevant to it without interpreting the other sub-fields. This ensures that the MS radio access capability does not need to be interpreted by the NSS, and the full MS radio access capability is always sent by the MS to the SGSN, and thereafter provided to the BSS irrespective of the actual BSS capabilities.

The SGSN shall provide the MS radio access capability as an information element on the Gb interface. It is the responsibility of the SGSN to provide the BSS with the most recent MS radio access capability received from the MS. The MS radio access capability information element can be included in a downlink transfer request, or be sent in a specific message that updates the MS radio access capability information in the BSS. The BSS may at any time request the MS radio access capability for a given MS to be transmitted from the SGSN to the BSS.

A specific optimisation allows the BSS to receive a reduced MS radio access capability at initial access directly from the MS. This enables the BSS not to wait for the full MS radio access capability to be provided by the SGSN, and is therefore quicker for the initial MS-originated transmission. The reduced MS radio access capability can be carried in several RR messages depending on the access method, e.g., in the initial random access message, or in the first uplink radio block. Details are provided in 3G TS 24.008 and GSM 04.60.

At inter system change (UMTS to GSM) the MS radio access capability shall be sent to the SGSN in the Routing Area Update Request message, as specified in 3G TS 24.008. The SGSN then provides the BSS with the GSM radio capabilities.

6.14.1.2 UE Capability (UMTS Only)

The UE capability information element contains all the UMTS radio capabilities of the MS (power control, code resource, UE mode, ciphering, PDCP capabilities, etc.) that the RNC has to know in order to handle radio resources for this MS.

The MS sends the UE capability information element to the serving RNC upon RRC connection establishment, and the RNC stores it. This is done before the Attach Request or Routing Area Update Request message is sent.

NOTE: In UMTS, only the RNC handles the radio capabilities.

At SRNC relocation the source RNC sends the UE capability transparently through the core network to the target RNC. If the RNC has not received the UE capability information it can enquire the MS to send the information.

At inter system change (GSM to UMTS) the UE capability is transferred from the MS to the serving RNC on RRC connection establishment before the Routing Area Update Request message is sent.

Details are provided in 3G TS 25.331 and 3G TS 25.413.

6.14.2 MS Network Capability

The MS network capability contains non radio-related capabilities, e.g., the GSM GPRS ciphering, UMTS authentication, and TI extension capabilities. In the coding of the information element certain capabilities may be

grouped together in a single indicator. The SGSN stores the MS network capability which is used both locally by the SGSN and for transfer to the new SGSN at all types of inter SGSN RA update.

7 Network Management Functionality

The Network Management function provides mechanisms to support O&M functions related to the packet domain.

8 Radio Resource Functionality

8.1 Radio Resource Functionality (GSM Only)

8.1.1 Cell Selection and Reselection

An MS (in any mode of operation (A, B, or C)) cannot camp on more than one cell. If the MS is in idle mode, see 3G TS 23.022, then it shall use cell selection and reselection procedures as described in GSM 03.64 and specified in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08 [16b].

8.1.2 Discontinuous Reception

A GSM MS may be able to choose if it wants to use discontinuous reception (DRX) or not. If using DRX, the MS shall also be able to specify other DRX parameters that indicate the delay for the network to send a page request or a channel assignment to the MS (see GSM 03.64).

The DRX parameters shall be indicated by the MS in the attach procedure. The SGSN shall then in each page request send these parameters to the BSS that uses this information and the IMSI to calculate the correct paging group.

DRX usage is independent of the MM states IDLE, STANDBY and READY. As DRX can be used by a GPRS MS in READY state, DRX has to be considered also when assigning a packet data channel for downlink transfer. The SGSN shall therefore indicate the DRX parameters for the MS in all packet transmission requests to the BSS.

A GSM MS shall not apply DRX in READY state during the GPRS attach and routing area update procedures.

8.1.3 Radio Resource Management

GSM Radio Resource Management functions are defined in GSM 04.07 [12]. The radio interface layer 3 protocol is specified in 3G TS 24.008.

8.1.3.1 Layer Functions

GPRS radio resource management procedures are required for the following functions:

- allocation and release of physical resources (i.e., timeslots) associated with a GPRS channel;
- monitoring GPRS channel utilisation to detect under-utilised or congested GPRS channels;
- initiating congestion control procedures; and
- distribution of GPRS channel configuration information for broadcasting to the MSs.

8.1.3.2 Model of Operation

8.1.3.2.1 Dynamic Allocation of Radio Resources

A cell may or may not support GPRS.

A cell supporting GPRS may have GPRS radio resources allocated at a given instance. If no GPRS radio resources are allocated, an MS can request allocation of such resources. MSs may then use these radio resources. The PLMN may dynamically increase, to a PLMN operator-defined maximum, or, decrease to an operator-defined minimum, the radio resources allocated.

The network broadcasts GPRS system information on the common control channels.

GSM radio resources are dynamically shared between GPRS and other GSM services.

8.1.4 Paging for GPRS Downlink Transfer

An MS in STANDBY state is paged by the SGSN before a downlink transfer to that MS. The paging procedure shall move the MM state to READY to allow the SGSN to forward downlink data to the radio resource. Therefore, any uplink data from the MS that moves the MM context at the SGSN to READY state is a valid response to paging.

The SGSN supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the SGSN receives no response from the MS to the Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent.

The MS shall accept pages also in READY state if no radio resource is assigned. This supports recovery from inconsistent MM states in MS and SGSN.

The GPRS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 54.

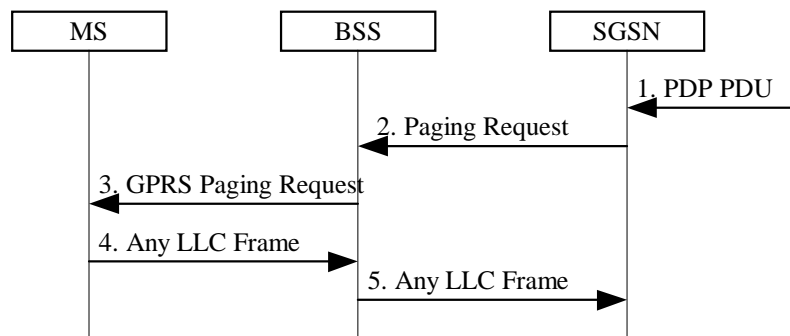


Figure 54: GPRS Paging Procedure

- 1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in STANDBY state. Downlink signalling to a STANDBY state MS initiates paging as well.
- 2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS, DRX Parameters) message to the BSS serving the MS. IMSI is needed by the BSS in order to calculate the MS paging group. P-TMSI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Area indicates the routing area in which the MS is paged. Channel Needed indicates GPRS paging. QoS is the negotiated QoS for the PDP context that initiates the paging procedure, and indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests.
- 3) The BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (P-TMSI, Channel Needed) message in each cell belonging to the addressed routing area. This is described in GSM 03.64.
- 4) Upon receipt of a GPRS Paging Request message, the MS shall respond with either any single valid LLC frame (e.g., a Receive Ready or Information frame) that implicitly is interpreted as a page response message by the SGSN. The MS shall not use the LLC NULL frame as a page response. When responding, the MS changes MM state to READY. The response is preceded by the Packet Channel Request and Packet Immediate Assignment procedures as described in GSM 03.64.
- 5) Upon reception of the LLC frame, the BSS adds the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell and sends the LLC frame to the SGSN. The SGSN shall then consider the LLC frame to be an implicit paging response message and stop the paging response timer.

8.2 Radio Resource Functionality (UMTS Only)

8.2.1 Radio Resource Management

UTRAN functions are defined in 3G TS 25.401. The radio interface protocol architecture is specified in 3G TS 25.301, and the Radio Resource Control protocol is specified in 3G TS 25.331.

8.2.2 RRC State Machine

The RRC state machine is a description model of how the MS and the UTRAN co-operate regarding RRC functionality. The RRC state describes the MS state in the UTRAN. This subclause contains a brief description of the RRC state machine, for more information see 3G TS 25.303.

The RRC state machine exists as two peer entities, one in the MS and one in UTRAN. Apart from transient situations and error cases the two peer entities are synchronised. Figure 55 illustrates the main modes and states of the RRC state machine.

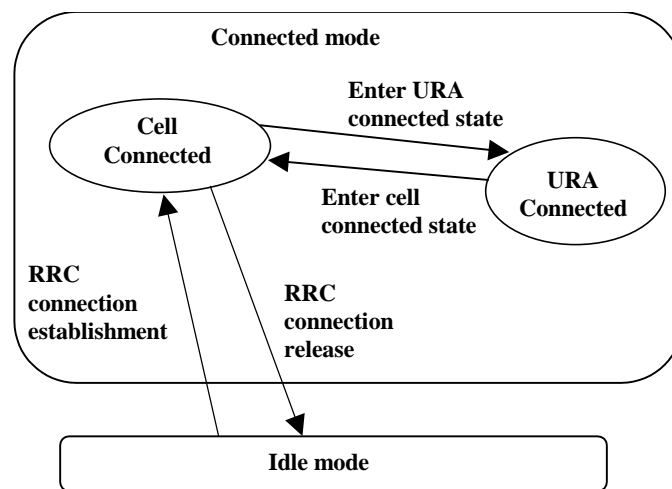


Figure 55: RRC Modes, Main RRC States and Main Mode and State Transition

RRC Idle mode: In the Idle mode there is no connection established between the MS and UTRAN. There is no signalling between UTRAN and the MS except for system information that is sent from UTRAN on a broadcast channel to the MS. The MS can also receive paging messages with a CN identity on the PCH. There is no information of the MS stored in UTRAN in this mode.

RRC Connected mode: In the Connected mode the main states are Cell Connected state and URA Connected state. In this mode there is one RNC that is acting as serving RNC, and an RRC connection is established between the MS and this SRNC.

- When the MS position is known at the cell level, the MS is in the Cell Connected state. When in Cell Connected state, the RRC connection mobility is handled by handover and cell update procedures.
- When the MS position is known at the URA level, the MS is in the URA Connected state. URA updating procedures provides the mobility functionality in this state. No dedicated radio resources are used in the URA Connected state.

8.2.3 Paging Initiated by CN

A CN node requests paging only for MSs in CMM-IDLE state or PMM-IDLE state. In the separate CN architecture, paging from a CN node is done independently from the state of the MS in the other CN service domain.

In this alternative with paging co-ordination in the UTRAN, the MS does not need to listen to the PCH (Paging Channel) in the RRC Connected mode, at least not when MS is allocated a dedicated channel.

For each paging request received from a CN node, the RNC determines whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In order to achieve this, the context that is prepared within the SRNC for MS in RRC Connected mode must contain the IMSI, which is the common MS identity for the two CN domains.

If no context is found for the MS, "normal PCH paging" is performed. The paging message is transferred on the paging channel, and it includes the MS paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.

If a context is found, a "CN paging message" is transferred using the existing RRC connection. This message includes a CN service domain type indication.

8.2.3.1 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN without RRC Connection for CS

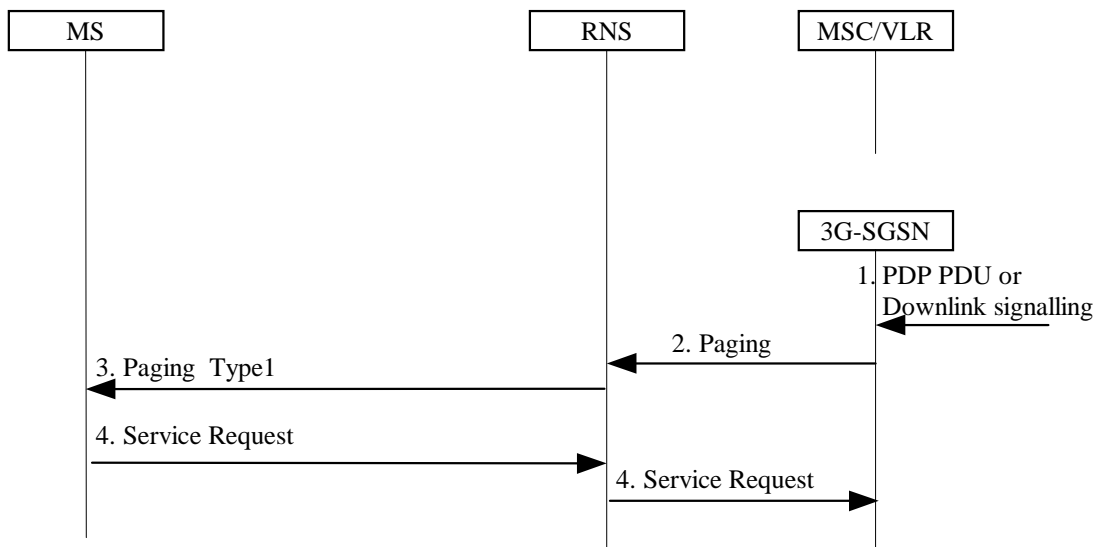


Figure 56: PS Paging Without RRC Connection for CS

- 1) The 3G-SGSN receives a PDP PDU or downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.
- 2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routing area in which the MS located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group, and to identify the paged MS. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is also included. Area indicates the routing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) initiated the paging message, and it represents "SGSN" in this case.
- 3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has no RRC connection, so a "normal PCH paging" is performed. Paging Type 1 (IMSI or P-TMSI, Paging originator, CN domain ID) is transferred on the Paging channel, IMSI or P-TMSI identifies the MS. Paging originator indicates whether this is core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "CN" in this case. And CN domain ID indicates whether this paging message is for CS service or PS service, so it represents "PS" in this case.
- 4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclause "Service Request Procedure (UMTS Only)".

Optionally, 3G-SGSN may include "Non Searching Indication" in RANAP Paging message in this case. If a "Non Searching Indication" parameter is present, the RNC will not search the established RRC connection, and just initiate "normal PCH paging".

8.2.3.2 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN With RRC Connection for CS

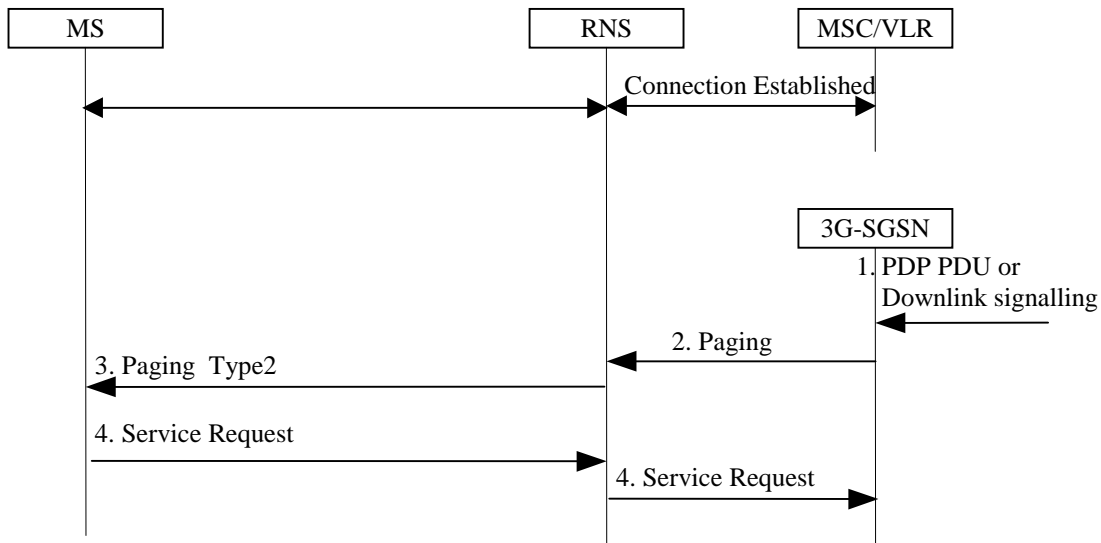


Figure 57: PS Paging With RRC Connection for CS

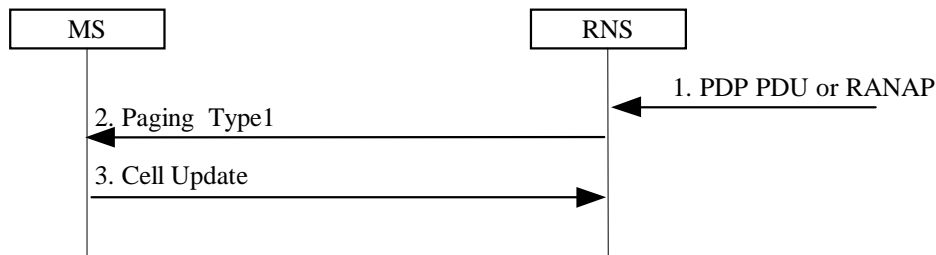
- 1) The 3G-SGSN receives a PDP PDU or downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.
- 2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS is located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is included, and it identifies the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates to which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) the paging was initiated, and it represents "3G-SGSN" in this case.
- 3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has an established RRC connection for CS service, so RNS sends a RRC Paging Type 2(CN domain ID) message to the MS on established RRC connection. CN Domain ID indicates to which domain (CS or PS) the paging shall be directed, so it represents "PS" in this case.
- 4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclause "Service Request Procedure (UMTS Only)".

8.2.4 Paging Initiated by UTRAN

An MS in RRC URA connected state is paged by the RNC before a downlink transfer to that MS. The URA paging procedure shall move the RRC state to Cell Connected to allow the RNC to forward downlink data or signalling message to the radio resource. Therefore, RRC: Cell Update message from the MS that moves the RRC State at the RNC to Cell Connected state is a valid response to URA paging.

The RNC supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the RNC receives no response from the MS to the URA Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent. For more information see TS 25.303.

The URA Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 58.

**Figure 58: URA Paging Procedure**

- 1) The RNS receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in RRC URA connected state. Downlink signalling to a MS in RRC URA connected state initiates URA paging as well.
- 2) The RNS pages the MS with one Paging Type 1 (RNTI, Paging originator) message in each cell belonging to the UTRAN routing area where the MS exists. RNTI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Paging originator indicates whether this is the core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "UTRAN" in this case.
- 3) The paging request triggers the Cell Update procedures in the MS. The Cell Update procedures are described in TS 25.331.

9 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functionality

9.1 Definition of Packet Data Protocol States

A GPRS subscription contains the subscription of one or more PDP addresses. Each PDP address is described by one or more PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. Each PDP context may be associated with a TFT. At most one PDP context associated with the same PDP address may exist at any time with no TFT assigned to it. Every PDP context exists independently in one of two PDP states. The PDP state indicates whether data transfer is enabled for that PDP address and TFT or not. In case all PDP contexts associated with the same PDP address are deactivated, data transfer for that PDP address is disabled. Activation and deactivation are described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, Deactivation, and Preservation Functions". All PDP contexts of a subscriber are associated with the same MM context for the IMSI of that subscriber.

9.1.1 INACTIVE State

The INACTIVE state characterises the data service for a certain PDP address of the subscriber as not activated. The PDP context contains no routeing or mapping information to process PDP PDUs related to that PDP address. No data can be transferred. A changing location of a subscriber causes no update for the PDP context in INACTIVE state even if the subscriber is GPRS-attached.

Mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state by the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure if the GGSN is allowed to initiate the activation of the PDP context for that PDP address. Otherwise, mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state invoke error procedures in the GGSN relevant to the external network protocol, for example, an IP packet is discarded and an ICMP (see RFC 792 [41]) packet (error notification) is returned to the source of the received packet. Other error procedures may be introduced on the application level, but this is outside the scope of the present document.

The MS initiates the movement from INACTIVE to ACTIVE state by initiating the PDP Context Activation procedure.

9.1.2 ACTIVE State

In ACTIVE state, the PDP context for the PDP address in use is activated in MS, SGSN and GGSN. The PDP context contains mapping and routing information for transferring PDP PDUs for that particular PDP address between MS and GGSN. The PDP state ACTIVE is permitted only when the mobility management state of the subscriber is STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED. The Iu interface radio access bearer may or may not be established for an active PDP context.

An active PDP context for an MS is moved to INACTIVE state when the deactivation procedure is initiated.

All active PDP contexts for an MS are moved to INACTIVE state when the MM state changes to IDLE or PMM-DETACHED.

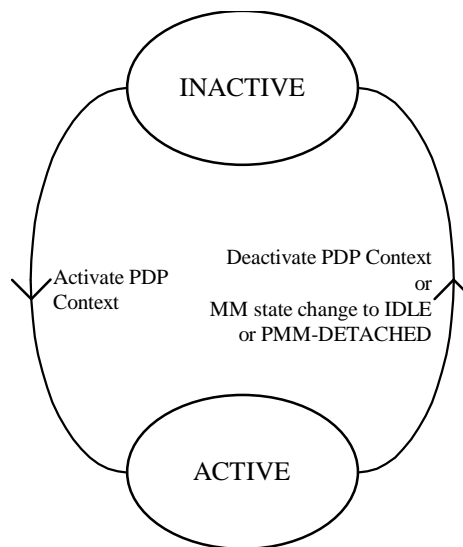


Figure 59: Functional PDP State Model

9.2 PDP Context Activation, Modification, Deactivation, and Preservation Functions

A GPRS-attached MS can initiate the activation, modification, and deactivation functions at any time for a PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. A GGSN may request the activation of a PDP context to a GPRS-attached subscriber. A GGSN may initiate the deactivation of a PDP context.

NOTE: If the MS is in PMM-IDLE state, it needs to perform a service request procedure to enter the PMM-CONNECTED state before initiating these procedure.

Upon receiving an Activate PDP Context Request message or an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to set up PDP contexts. The first procedure includes subscription checking, APN selection, and host configuration, while the latter procedure excludes these functions and reuses PDP context parameters including the PDP address but except the QoS parameters. Once activated, all PDP contexts that share the same PDP address and APN shall be managed equally. At least one PDP context shall be activated for a PDP address before a Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be initiated. When the MS performs an RA update procedure to change from a release 99 to a release 97 or 98 system, only one active PDP context per PDP address and APN shall be preserved. This PDP context is selected taking the QoS profile and NSAPI value into account.

Upon receiving a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to deactivate the PDP context. When the last PDP context associated with a PDP address is deactivated, then N-PDU transfer for this PDP address is disabled.

An MS does not have to receive the (De-)Activate PDP Context Accept message before issuing another (De-)Activate PDP Context Request. However, only one request can be outstanding for every TI.

By sending a RAB Release Request or Iu Release Request message to the SGSN, UTRAN initiates the release of one or more RABs. The preservation function allows the active PDP contexts associated with the released RABs to be preserved without modification in the CN, and the RABs can then be re-established at a later stage.

9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses

PDP addresses can be allocated to an MS in four different ways:

- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address permanently to the MS (static PDP address);
- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic HPLMN PDP address);
- the VPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic VPLMN PDP address); or
- the PDN operator or administrator assigns an IP address to the MS after a PDP context has been activated (External PDN Address Allocation).

It is the HPLMN operator that defines in the subscription whether a dynamic HPLMN or VPLMN PDP address can be used.

For every IMSI, zero, one, or more dynamic PDP address per PDP type can be assigned. For every IMSI, zero, one, or more static PDP addresses per PDP type can be subscribed to.

When dynamic addressing from the HPLMN or the VPLMN is used, it is the responsibility of the GGSN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address. When External PDN Address Allocation is used, it is the responsibility of the MS and the PDN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address by means of protocols such as DHCP or MIP. In case of DHCP, the GGSN provides the function of a DHCP Relay Agent as defined in RFC 2131 [47] and RFC 1542 [45]. In case of MIP, the GGSN provides the function of a Foreign Agent as defined in RFC 2002 [46].

Only static PDP addressing is applicable in the network-requested PDP context activation case.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 60 and Figure 61.

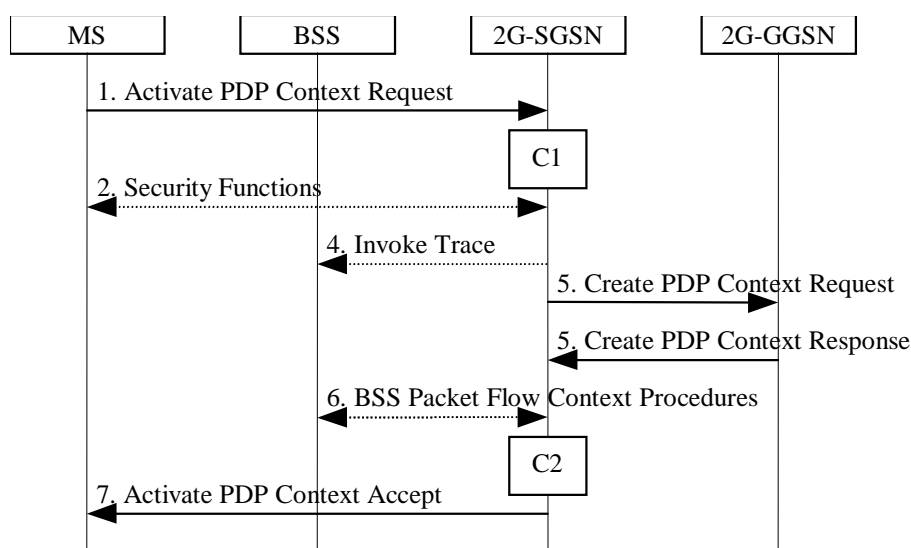


Figure 60: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GSM

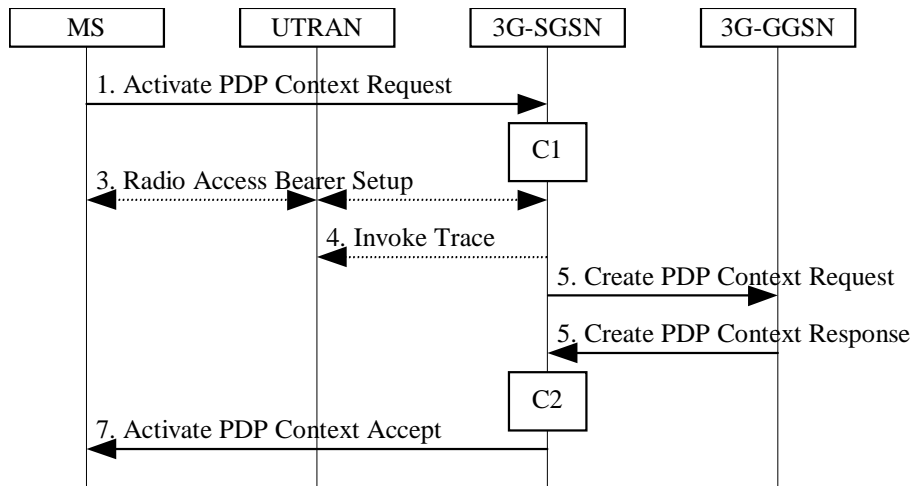


Figure 61: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

- 1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.
- 2) In GSM, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".
- 3) In UMTS, RAB setup is done by the RAB Assignment procedure, see subclause "RAB Assignment Procedure".
- 4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, and Trace Type are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.
- 5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, NSAPI, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall derive Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics and/or PDP context Charging Characteristics if received from the HLR as follows: if a "PDP context Charging Characteristics" is present for this PDP context, it shall be sent; otherwise if a "Subscribed Charging Characteristics" is present for this subscriber it shall be sent. If neither "PDP context Charging Characteristics" nor a "Subscribed Charging Characteristics" is present, the SGSN may choose a default Charging Characteristics

which would be sent to the GGSN, and used there as well. The Charging Characteristics sent to the GGSN shall also include an indication whether it was retrieved from subscription data received from the HLR or is a default profile determined by the SGSN. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. When the Charging Characteristics sent by the SGSN have been determined by the SGSN (not retrieved from HLR subscription data), the GGSN may choose to ignore this. The charging characteristics on the GPRS subscription and individually subscribed APNs are specified in 3G TS 32.015 [70]. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state, and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated, then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

- 6) In GSM, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".
- 7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be used to activate a PDP context while reusing the PDP address and other PDP context information from an already active PDP context, but with a different QoS profile. Procedures for APN selection and PDP address negotiation are not executed. Each PDP context sharing the same PDP address and APN shall be identified by a unique TI and a unique NSAPI.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be executed without providing a Traffic Flow Template (TFT) to the newly activated PDP context if all other active PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN already have an associated TFT, otherwise a TFT shall be provided. The TFT contains attributes that specify an IP header filter that is used to direct data packets received from the interconnected external packet data network to the newly activated PDP context.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may only be initiated after a PDP context is already activated for the same PDP address and APN. The procedure is illustrated in Figure 62 and Figure 63.

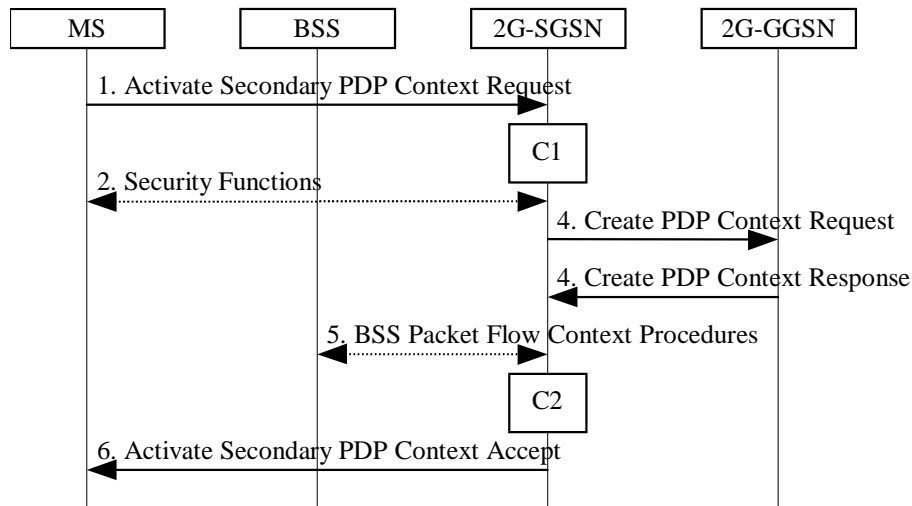


Figure 62: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GSM

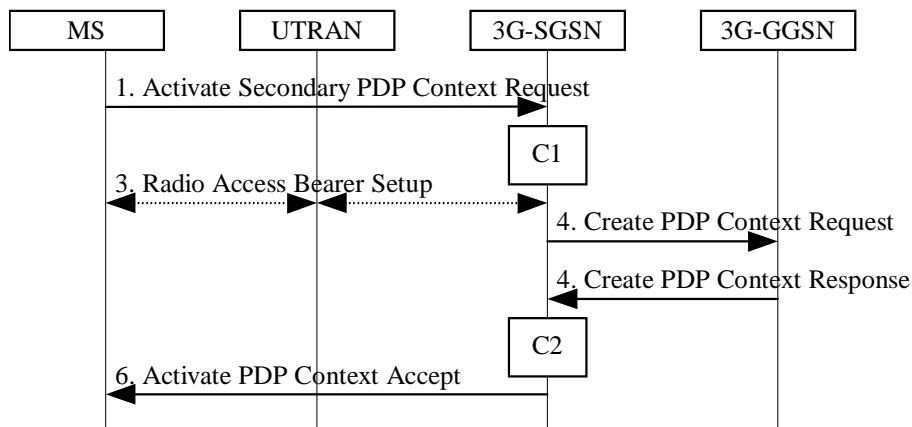


Figure 63: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

- 1) The MS sends an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request (Linked TI, NSAPI, TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Linked TI indicates the TI value assigned to any one of the already activated PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. TFT is sent transparently through the SGSN to the GGSN to enable packet classification for downlink data transfer. TI and NSAPI contain values not used by any other activated PDP context.
- 2) In GSM, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".
- 3) In UMTS, RAB setup is done by the RAB Assignment procedure.
- 4) The SGSN validates the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request using the TI indicated by Linked TI. The same GGSN address is used by the SGSN as for the already-activated PDP context(s) for that TI and PDP address.

The SGSN and GGSN may restrict and negotiate the requested QoS as specified in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (QoS Negotiated, TEID, NSAPI, Primary NSAPI, TFT) message to the affected GGSN. Primary NSAPI indicates the NSAPI value assigned to

any one of the already activated PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN. TFT is included only if received in the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message. The GGSN uses the same external network as used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, generates a new entry in its PDP context table, and stores the TFT. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs via different GTP tunnels between the SGSN and the external PDP network. The GGSN returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message to the SGSN.

- 5) In GSM, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".
- 6) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS via different GTP tunnels and possibly different LLC links.

For each additionally activated PDP context a QoS profile and TFT may be requested.

If the secondary PDP context activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Reject (Cause) message, then the MS may attempt another activation with a different TFT, depending on the cause.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.2 Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure allows the GGSN to initiate the activation of a PDP context. When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN checks if a PDP context is established for that PDP address. If no PDP context has been previously established the GGSN may try to deliver the PDP PDU by initiating the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure. The criteria used by the GGSN to determine whether trying to deliver the PDP PDU to the MS may be based on subscription information and are outside the scope of GPRS standardisation.

To support Network-Requested PDP Context Activation the GGSN has to have static PDP information about the PDP address. To determine whether Network-Requested PDP Context Activation is supported for a PDP address the GGSN checks if there is static PDP information for that PDP address.

Once these checks have been performed the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure.

The network operator may implement the following techniques to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR:

- Implementation of the Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag (MNRG) technique in GGSN, SGSN, and HLR (see subclause "Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure").
- The GGSN may reject or discard PDP PDUs after a previous unsuccessful delivery attempt. This systematic rejection of PDP PDUs would be performed during a certain time after the unsuccessful delivery.
- The GGSN may store the address of the SGSN with which the GGSN established the last PDP context. This would prevent an enquiry to the HLR. This SGSN address would be considered as valid during a certain time.

9.2.2.2.1 Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 64.

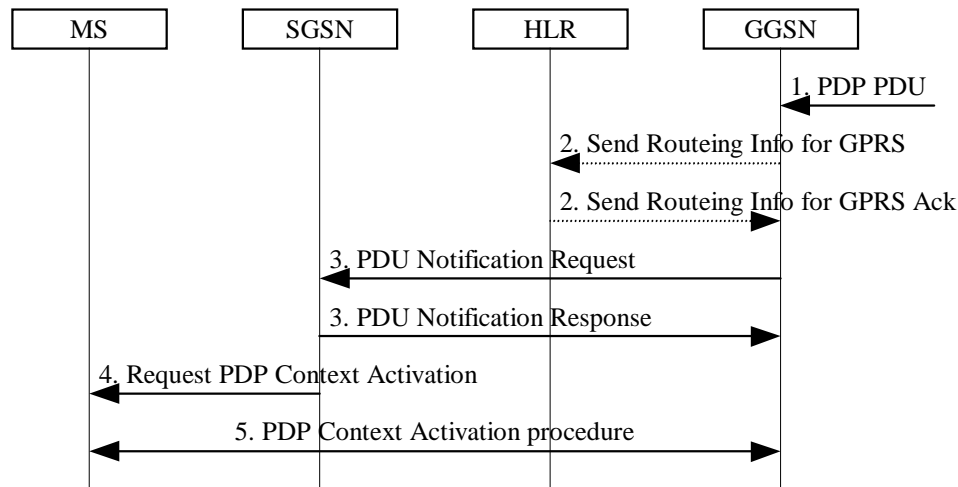


Figure 64: Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

- 1) When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN determines if the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure has to be initiated. The GGSN may store subsequent PDP PDUs received for the same PDP address.
- 2) The GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. If the HLR determines that the request can be served, it returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason) message to the GGSN. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter is included if the MNRG flag is set in the HLR. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter indicates the reason for the setting of the MNRG flag as stored in the MNRR record (see GSM 03.40). If the MNRR record indicates a reason other than "No Paging Response", the HLR shall include the GGSN number in the GGSN-list of the subscriber.

If the HLR determines that the request cannot be served (e.g., IMSI unknown in HLR), the HLR shall send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, MAP Error Cause) message. Map Error Cause indicates the reason for the negative response.

- 3) If the SGSN address is present and either Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason is not present or Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason indicates "No Paging Response", the GGSN shall send a PDU Notification Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to the SGSN indicated by the HLR. Otherwise, the GGSN shall set the MNRG flag for that MS. The SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN in order to acknowledge that it shall request the MS to activate the PDP context indicated with PDP Address.
- 4) The SGSN sends a Request PDP Context Activation (TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to request the MS to activate the indicated PDP context.
- 5) The PDP context is activated with the PDP Context Activation procedure (see subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure").

9.2.2.2.2 Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

If the PDP context requested by the GGSN cannot be established, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Response (Cause) or a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN depending on if the context activation fails before or after the SGSN has sent a Request PDP Context Activation message to the MS. Cause indicates the reason why the PDP context could not be established:

- "IMSI Not Known". The SGSN has no MM context for that IMSI (Cause in PDU Notification Response).
- "MS GPRS Detached". The MM state of the MS is IDLE (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- "MS Not GPRS Responding". The MS is GPRS-attached to the SGSN but the MS does not respond. This may be due to the lack of a response to a GPRS Paging Request, due to an Abnormal RLC condition, or due to no Activate PDP Context Request message received within a certain time after the Request PDP Context Activation message was delivered to the MS (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).
- "MS Refuses". The MS refuses explicitly the network-requested PDP context (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

When receiving the PDU Notification Response or the PDU Notification Reject Request message the GGSN may reject or discard the PDP PDU depending on the PDP type.

After an unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure the network may perform some actions to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR. The actions taken depend on the cause of the delivery failure.

- If the MS is not reachable or if the MS refuses the PDP PDU (Cause value "MS Not GPRS Responding" or "MS Refuses"), then the SGSN shall not change the setting of MNRG for this MS. The GGSN may refuse any PDP PDU for that PDP address during a certain period. The GGSN may store the SGSN address during a certain period and send subsequent PDU Notification Request messages to that SGSN.
- If the MS is GPRS-detached or if the IMSI is not known in the SGSN (Cause value "MS GPRS Detached" or "IMSI Not Known"), then the SGSN, the GGSN, and the HLR may perform the Protection and Mobile User Activity procedures.

The Protection procedure is illustrated in Figure 65.

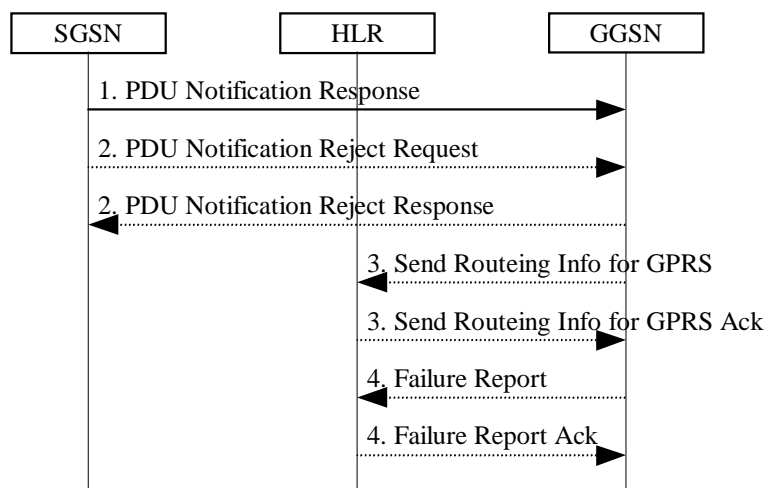


Figure 65: Protection Procedure

- 1) If the MM context of the mobile is IDLE or if the SGSN has no information about that user, the SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to "MS GPRS Detached" or "IMSI Not Known", otherwise the Cause shall be "Activation Proceeds". If the Cause is "MS GPRS Detached" or "IMSI Not Known" and if the SGSN has an MM context for that user, the SGSN sets MNRG to indicate the need to report to the HLR when the next contact with that MS is performed.
- 2) If the MS does not respond or refuses the activation request, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to "MS Not GPRS Responding" or "MS Refuses". The GGSN returns a PDU Notification Reject Response message to the SGSN.
- 3) If Cause equals "IMSI Not Known" the GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. The HLR returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Cause) message to the GGSN indicating the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. If SGSN Address is different from the one previously stored by the GGSN, then steps 3, 4, and 5 in Figure 64 are followed.

- 4) If SGSN Address is the same as the one previously stored in the GGSN, or if the Cause value returned in step 1 equals "MS GPRS Detached", then the GGSN sets MNRG for that PDP address and sends a Failure Report (IMSI, GGSN Number, GGSN Address) message to the HLR to request MNRG to be set in the HLR. The HLR sets (if not already set) MNRG for the IMSI and adds GGSN Number and GGSN Address to the list of GGSNs to report to when activity from that IMSI is detected. GGSN Number is either the number of the GGSN, or, if a protocol-converting GSN is used as an intermediate node, the number of the protocol-converting GSN. GGSN Address is an optional parameter that shall be included if a protocol-converting GSN is used.

The Mobile User Activity procedure is illustrated in Figure 66.

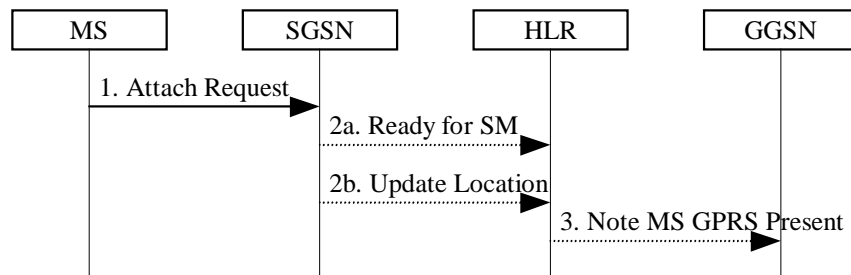


Figure 66: Mobile User Activity Procedure

- 1) The SGSN receives an indication that an MS is reachable, e.g., an Attach Request message from the MS.
- 2a) If the SGSN contains an MM context of the MS and MNRG for that MS is set, the SGSN shall send a Ready for SM (IMSI, MS Reachable) message to the HLR and clears MNRG for that MS.
- 2b) If the SGSN does not keep the MM context of the MS, the SGSN shall send an Update Location message (see subclause "GPRS Attach Function") to the HLR.
- 3) When the HLR receives the Ready for SM message or the Update Location message for an MS that has MNRG set, it clears MNRG for that MS and sends a Note MS GPRS Present (IMSI, SGSN Address) message to all the GGSNs in the list of the subscriber. (The Ready for SM message also triggers the SMS alert procedure as described in subclause "Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer".) SGSN Address contains the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. Upon reception of Note MS Present, each GGSN shall clear MNRG.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure" or triggered by a RAB Release procedure initiated by an RNC, or an MS and SGSN can decide after an RNC-initiated Iu release, to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;
- Radio Priority;
- Packet Flow Id;
- PDP Address (in case of the GGSN-initiated modification procedure); and
- TFT (in case of MS-initiated modification procedure).

The SGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An RNC can request an Iu release by sending an Iu Release Request message to the SGSN. After Iu release the MS and SGSN shall modify the PDP contexts according to the rules defined in subclause "RNC-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure".

An RNC can request the release of a radio access bearer. After RAB release the MS and the SGSN shall locally modify the corresponding PDP context according to rules defined in the subclause "RAB Release-Initiated Local PDP Context Modification Procedure".

A trace may be activated while a PDP context is active. To enable trace activation in a GGSN, the SGSN shall send an Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN. If PDP context modification is performed only to activate a trace, then the SGSN shall not send a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 67.

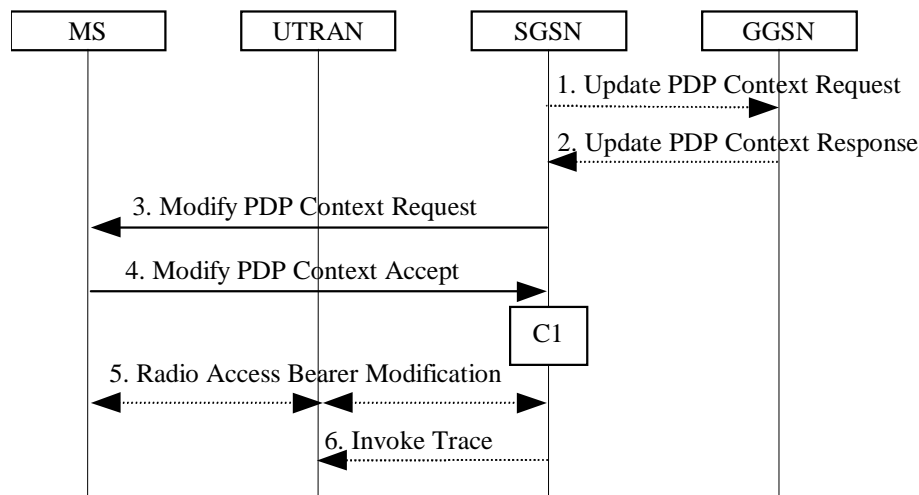


Figure 67: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

- 1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, QoS Negotiated, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, OMC Identity) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified, then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, and OMC Identity in the message if GGSN trace is activated while the PDP context is active. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.
- 2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message.
- 3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and may send a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.
- 4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.
- 5) In UMTS, radio access bearer modification may be performed by the RAB Assignment procedure.
- 6) If BSS trace is activated while the PDP context is active, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, and Trace Type are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 68.

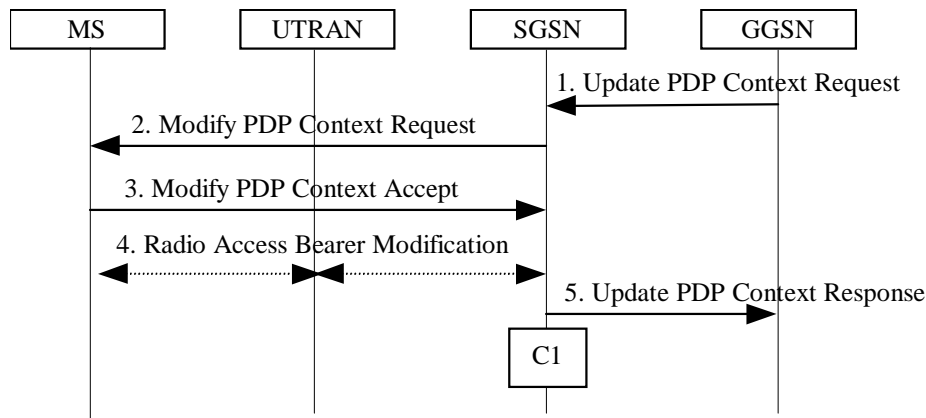


Figure 68: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

- 1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, PDP Address, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.
- 2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, PDP Address, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.
- 3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.
- 4) In UMTS, radio access bearer modification may be performed by the RAB Assignment procedure.
- 5) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message, or upon completion of the RAB modification procedure, the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 69.

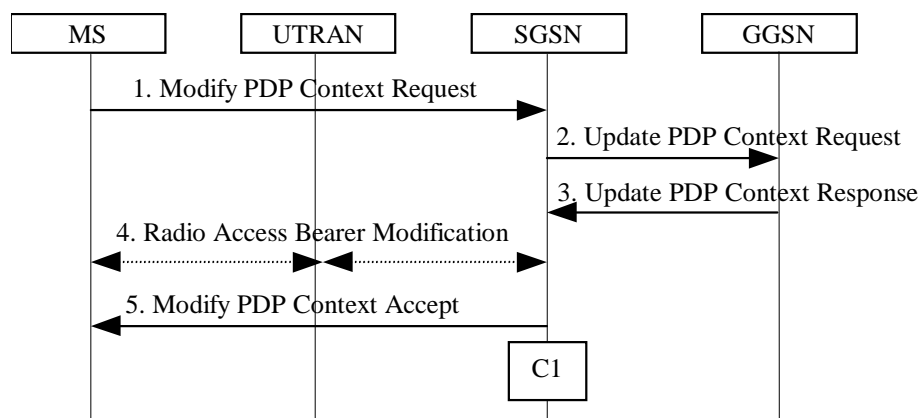


Figure 69: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

- 1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Either QoS Requested or TFT or both may be included. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile, while TFT indicates the TFT that is to be added or modified or deleted from the PDP context.

- 2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, QoS Negotiated, TFT) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated and/or TFT received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., TFT contains inconsistent packet filters), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.
- 3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated, stores, modifies, or deletes TFT of that PDP context as indicated in TFT, and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message.
- 4) In UMTS, radio access bearer modification may be performed by the RAB Assignment procedure.
- 5) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.4 RNC-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The RNC can request the release of the Iu connection (see subclause "Iu Release Procedure") e.g., due to a break of the radio connection or due to user inactivity. After Iu Release the PDP contexts are modified as follows:

- In the SGSN, for a PDP context using background or interactive traffic class, the PDP context is preserved with no modifications.
- In the SGSN, for a PDP context using streaming or conversational traffic class, the PDP context is preserved, but the maximum bit rate is downgraded to 0 kbit/s (for both uplink and downlink) when the associated RAB is released. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN to set the maximum bit rate to 0 kbit/s in the GGSN. The value of 0 kbit/s for the guaranteed bit rate indicates to the GGSN to stop sending packets to the SGSN for this PDP context.

The following procedures shall be performed in the MS when the radio coverage is lost:

- For a PDP context using background or interactive traffic class, the PDP context is preserved even if RRC re-establishment procedures have failed.
- For a PDP context using streaming or conversational traffic class, the PDP context is preserved, but the maximum bit rate is downgraded to 0 kbit/s (for both uplink and downlink) when the RRC re-establishment procedure has failed. After coverage is regained the MS should start the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure or the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure. The MS shall use the PDP context modification procedure to re-activate the PDP context and to re-establish the RAB.

9.2.3.5 RAB Release-Initiated Local PDP Context Modification Procedure

The RNC can request a RAB to be released through the RAB Release procedure on the streaming or conversational traffic class bearers without releasing the Iu connection when there is a break in the radio connection. After the RAB(s) release the SGSN shall modify the PDP context as follows.

- In the SGSN, for a PDP context using streaming or conversational traffic class, the PDP context is preserved, but the maximum bit rate is downgraded to 0 kbit/s (for both uplink and downlink) when the associated RAB is released. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN to set the maximum bit rate to 0 kbit/s in the GGSN. The value of 0 kbit/s for the guaranteed bit rate indicates to the GGSN to stop sending packets to the SGSN on this PDP context.

The following procedures shall be performed in the MS when the radio coverage is lost:

- For a PDP context using streaming or conversational traffic class, the PDP context is preserved, but the maximum bit rate is downgraded to 0 kbit/s (for both uplink and downlink) when the RRC re-establishment procedure has failed. After coverage is regained the MS should start the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification

procedure or the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure. The MS shall use the PDP context modification procedure to re-activate the PDP context and to re-establish the RAB.

The radio access bearer shall be released by the RNC only when RRC re-establishment is not any longer possible. Therefore the change happens simultaneously in the MS and in the SGSN.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 70.

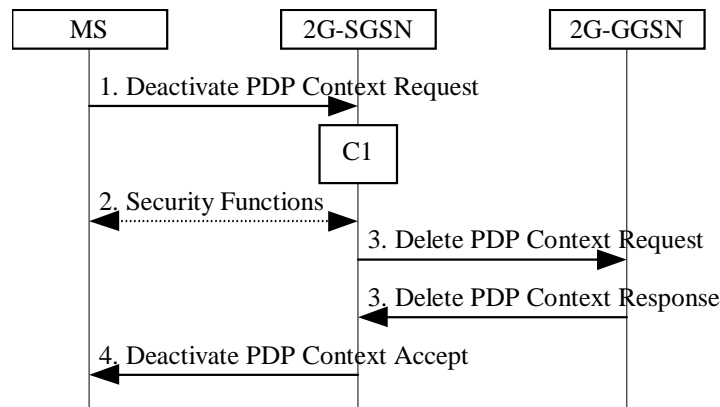


Figure 70: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GSM

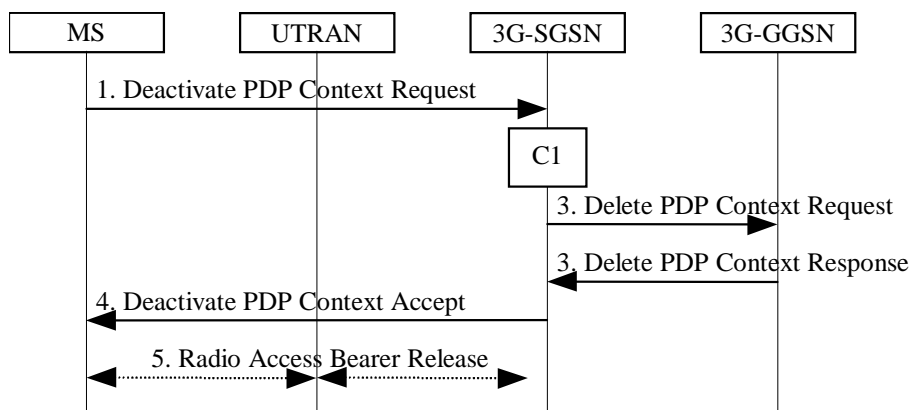


Figure 71: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS

- 1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN.
- 2) In GSM security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".
- 3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind was included by the MS in the Deactivate PDP Context Request message, then the SGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address by including Teardown Ind in the Delete PDP Context Request message. The GGSN removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.
- 4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the MS.
- 5) In UMTS, radio access bearer release is done by the RAB Assignment procedure.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message for a PDP context that is currently being activated, then the SGSN shall stop the PDP Context Activation procedure without responding to the MS, and continue with the PDP Context Deactivation initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 72.

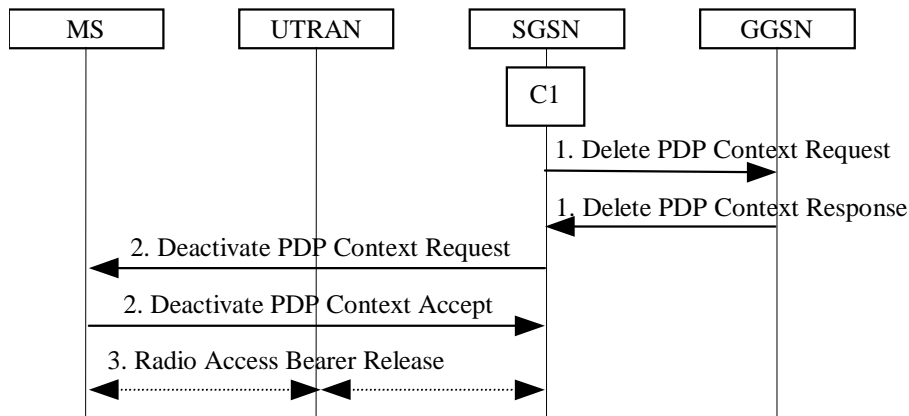


Figure 72: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

- 1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind is included by the SGSN, then the GGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.
- 2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind is included, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.
- 3) In UMTS, radio access bearer release is done by the RAB Assignment procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 73.

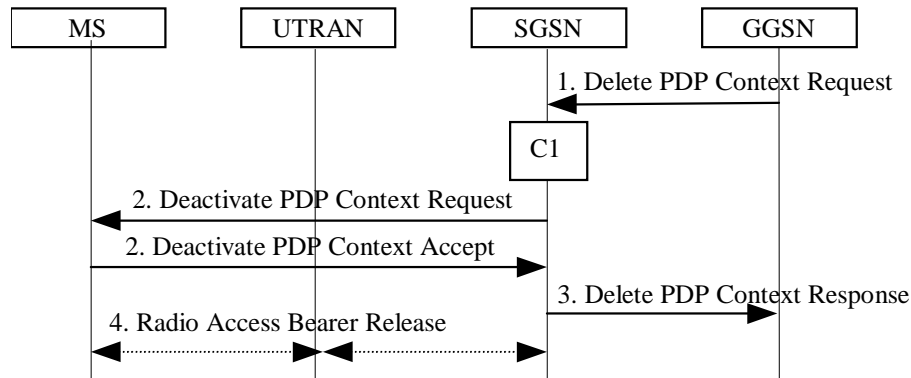


Figure 73: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

- 1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind indicates whether or not all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address shall be deactivated.
- 2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind was included by the SGSN, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.
- 3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.
- 4) In UMTS, radio access bearer release is done by the RAB Assignment procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.5 Preservation Procedures

By sending a RAB Release Request or Iu Release Request message to the SGSN, UTRAN initiates the release of one or more RABs. The preservation procedure allows the active PDP contexts associated with the released RABs to be preserved without modification in the CN, and the RABs can then be re-established at a later stage.

UTRAN uses the Iu Release Request to request release of all RABs of an MS, and the RAB Release Request in other cases.

9.2.5.1 Release of RABs Triggered by UTRAN

9.2.5.1.1 RAB Release Procedure

UTRAN initiates a RAB release procedure to release one or several RABs. The RAB Release procedure is illustrated in Figure 74.

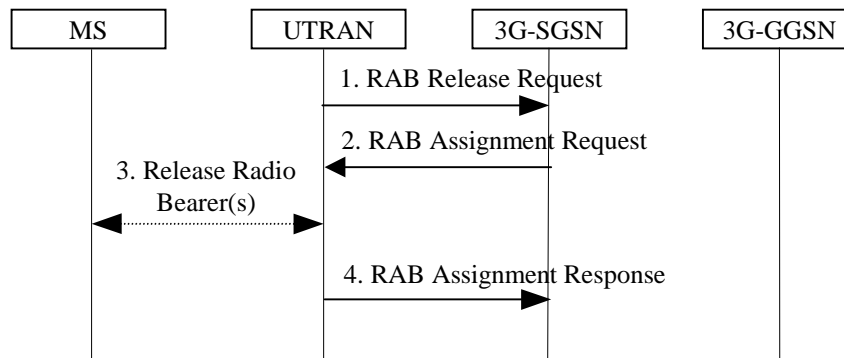


Figure 74: RAB Release Procedure

- 1) UTRAN initiates the procedure by sending a RAB Release Request (For each RAB to be released: RAB ID, Cause) message to SGSN.
- 2) The SGSN sends a RAB Assignment Request (For each RAB to be released: RAB ID, Cause) to UTRAN.
- 3) The Radio Bearer(s) are released if still existing.
- 4) UTRAN sends a RAB Assignment Response (For each released RAB: RAB ID, GTP SND, GTP SNU) to the SGSN. GTP SND and GTP SNU enable the SGSN to restore the values in case the PDP context is maintained and the RAB is re-established at a later stage.

9.2.5.1.2 Iu Release Procedure

UTRAN initiates an Iu release procedure to release all RABs of an MS and the Iu connection. The Iu Release procedure is illustrated in Figure 75.

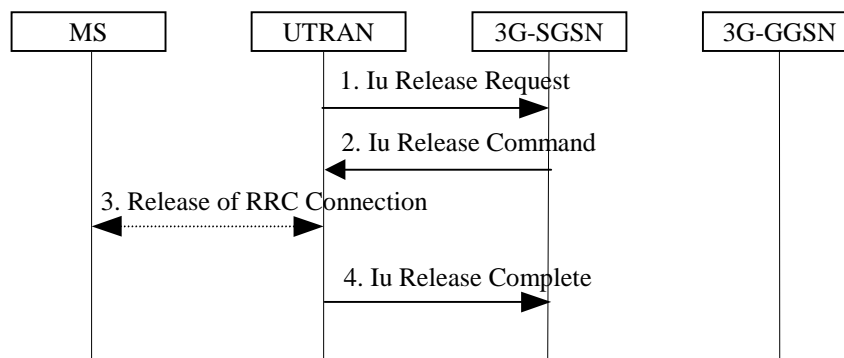


Figure 75: Iu Release Procedure

- 1) UTRAN sends an Iu Release Request (Cause) message to the SGSN.
- 2) The SGSN sends an Iu Release Command (Cause) message to UTRAN.
- 3) The RRC connection is released if still existing.
- 4) UTRAN confirms the Iu release by sending an Iu Release Complete (For each released RAB: RAB ID, GTP SND, GTP SNU) message to SGSN. GTP SND and GTP SNU enable the SGSN to restore the values in case the PDP context is maintained and the RAB is re-established at a later stage.

9.2.5.2 Re-establishment of RABs

The procedure for re-establishment of RABs allows the SGSN to re-establish RABs for active PDP contexts that don't have an associated RAB.

The MS initiates the re-establishment of RABs by using the Service Request (Service Type = Data) message. This is described in subclause "Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure".

When RABs for an MS that has no RRC connection needs to be re-established, the CN must first page the MS. This is described in subclause "Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure".

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;
- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp;
- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs; and
- optionally supports IP Multicast routeing of packets via a relay function in the GGSN.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. In case of PDP type PPP, the maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 502 octets. In other cases, the maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that results in an N-PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that results in an N-PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the 2G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with SMDCP. Between the 3G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with GTP-U and PDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with the UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) and a GSN address.

When multiple PDP contexts exist for the same PDP address of an MS, then the GGSN routes downlink N-PDUs to the different GTP tunnels based on the TFTs assigned to the PDP contexts. Upon reception of a PDP PDU, the GGSN evaluates for a match, first the packet filter amongst all TFTs that has the smallest evaluation precedence index and, in case no match is found, proceeds with the evaluation of packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index. This procedure shall be executed until a match is found, in which case the N-PDU is tunnelled to the SGSN via the PDP context that is associated with the TFT of the matching packet filter. If no match is found, the N-PDU shall be sent via the PDP context that does not have a TFT assigned to it; if all PDP contexts have a TFT assigned, the GGSN shall silently discard the PDP PDU.

The MS is responsible for creating or modifying PDP contexts and their QoS. The MS should define TFTs in such a way that downlink PDP PDUs are routed to a PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the receiver of this PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS).

For each uplink PDP PDU, the MS should choose the PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the sender of this PDP PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS). Packet classification and routeing within the MS is an MS-local matter. The GGSN shall not match uplink N-PDUs against TFTs.

TFTs are used for PDP types IP and PPP only. For PDP type PPP a TFT is applicable only when IP traffic is carried over PPP. If PPP carries header-compressed IP packets, then a TFT cannot be used.

To support roaming subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

The GGSN could also optionally support IP Multicast: this allows the MSs to join multicast groups and start receiving multicast packets. The GGSN duplicates the incoming multicast packets and relays them to the already active TEIDs. These TEIDs are those of MSs that have joined a multicast group.

9.4 Relay Function

The relay function of a network node transfers the PDP PDUs received from the incoming link to the appropriate outgoing link. At the RNC, the SGSN, and the GGSN the relay function stores all valid PDP PDUs until they are forwarded to the next network node or until the maximum holding time of the PDP PDUs is reached. The PDP PDUs are discarded when buffering is longer than their maximum holding time. This maximum holding time is implementation dependent and can be influenced by the PDP type, the QoS of the PDP PDU, the resource load status, and by buffer conditions. The discarding protects resources from useless transfer attempts, especially the radio resource. Impacts on user protocol operation by too short holding time shall be avoided.

In GSM, the SGSN and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from SMDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively. In UMTS, the RNC and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from PDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively.

PDP PDUs may be re-sequenced in the RNC, the SGSN, and/or in the GGSN depending on the setting of the delivery order attribute in the QoS profile. In GSM, the SGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to SMDCP. In UMTS, the SGSN relay function may optionally perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to Iu GTP-U and before passing the PDP PDUs to Gn GTP-U. The GGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to the Gi reference point. The RNC may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to PDCP.

9.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

The Packet Terminal Adaptation function adapts packets received from and transmitted to the Terminal Equipment to a form suitable for transmission within the PLMN.

A range of MT versions providing different standard interfaces towards the TE can be used, e.g.:

- MT with asynchronous serial interface and PAD (Packet Assembly / Disassembly) support. In the case when the PAD function does not exist in the MT, it exists in the TE.
- "Embedded MT" integrated with the TE, possibly via an industry-standard application program interface.
- MT with synchronous serial interface.

9.6 Encapsulation Function

The packet domain transparently transports PDP PDUs between external networks and MSs. All PDP PDUs are encapsulated and decapsulated for routing purposes. Encapsulation functionality exists at the MS, at the SGSN, and at the GGSN. Encapsulation allows PDP PDUs to be delivered to and associated with the correct PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, or the GGSN. Two different encapsulation schemes are used; one for the backbone network between two GSNs and between an SGSN and an RNC, and one for the GSM connection between the SGSN and the MS or for the UMTS RRC connection between the RNC and the MS.

Encapsulation requires that the MS is attached to GPRS, and that the PDP Context Activation procedure has been executed. If the GPRS Attach or PDP Context Activation procedures cannot be successfully executed, then uplink PDP PDUs are discarded in the MS. If these procedures have not been executed when a downlink PDP PDU arrives in the GGSN, then the downlink PDP PDU shall be discarded, rejected, or the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated.

9.6.1 Encapsulation Between GSNs

The packet domain PLMN backbone network encapsulates a PDP PDU with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header, and inserts this GTP PDU in a UDP PDU that again is inserted in an IP PDU. The IP and GTP PDU headers contain the GSN addresses and tunnel endpoint identifier necessary to uniquely address a GSN PDP context.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 3G-SGSN and RNC

On the Iu interface, a PDP PDU is encapsulated with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header.

9.6.3 Encapsulation Between 2G-SGSN and MS

Between a 2G-SGSN and an MS, an SGSN or MS PDP context is uniquely addressed with a temporary logical link identity and a network layer service access point identifier pair. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI. An NSAPI is assigned when the MS initiates the PDP Context Activation function. The relationship between TLLI / NSAPI and LLC / SNDCP is illustrated in Figure 76. TLLI and NSAPI are described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS".

9.6.4 Encapsulation Between RNC and MS

On the Uu interface, a PDP PDU is encapsulated with PDCP.

10 Message Screening Functionality

This screening mechanism may be performed by routers and firewalls, and performs the selection of which packets to allow and which to deny.

Only network-controlled message screening shall be supported. Network-controlled screening is used to protect the packet domain PLMN from known security problems, and the screening provided by a certain PLMN is applied independently of the MS user. Network-controlled screening is outside the scope of this specification.

11 Compatibility Issues

Non-GPRS MSs in GSM PLMNs that support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue operation.

GSM PLMNs that do not support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue interworking with GSM PLMNs that do support GPRS.

A GSM ME shall be able to access GPRS services with GPRS-aware SIMs, and with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware. A GPRS-aware SIM is able to store information in the elementary files EF_{KcGPRS} and EF_{LOCIGPRS}, as defined in GSM 11.11 [28].

The compatibility of SIMs and USIMs with GSM MEs or UMTS MEs is defined in 3G TS 22.102.

11.1 Interaction between Releases 97/98 and 99

NOTE: Unless specifically indicated, references to release 97 in this subclause refer to both release 97 and release 98.

11.1.1 Interactions Between GTP v0 (R97) and GTP v1 (R99)

When a first GSN receives a GTP PDU from a second GSN using a version not supported, then the first GSN shall return a "version not supported" error message to the second GSN. The second GSN shall then fall back to the most-recent version supported by the first GSN. A GSN shall use its most-recent GTP version when initiating GTP PDU transmission to a new GSN.

When an SGSN that supports GTP v1 establishes a GTP tunnel to a GGSN that supports GTP v0, then the SGSN shall convert a release 99 QoS profile to a release 97 QoS profile before transmitting the QoS profile to the GGSN. If the MS supports the R99 QoS profile, then the SGSN shall convert the negotiated R97 QoS profile to an R99 QoS profile before transmitting the QoS profile to the MS.

When an inter SGSN RA update procedure is performed from a first SGSN that supports GTP v1 to a second SGSN that supports GTP v0, then the first SGSN shall convert the R99 QoS profile to an R97 QoS profile before sending the SGSN Context Response message. If several PDP contexts have been activated for the same APN and PDP address in

the first SGSN (secondary PDP context activation), then all PDP contexts except the PDP context with the highest-quality QoS profile are deleted in the MS and in the first SGSN, and the first SGSN shall initiate deletion of these PDP contexts in the GGSN. 3G TS 23.107 [58] specifies how to determine the highest-quality QoS profile. The second SGSN shall be responsible for updating the remaining PDP context in the GGSN, and the GGSN shall remove the TFT if present when it receives the GTP v0 Update PDP Context Request message.

NOTE: The conversion between an R99 QoS profile and an R97 QoS profile is defined in 3G TS 23.107.

When an inter SGSN RA update procedure is performed from a first SGSN that supports GTP v0 to a second SGSN that supports GTP v1, then the second SGSN shall convert the R97 QoS profile to an R99 QoS profile, and use GTP v1 to send the Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN.

11.1.2 Interactions Between MS R97 and CN R99

When an R97 MS activates a PDP context and both the SGSN and the GGSN support R99, then the QoS profile shall not be converted to R99.

11.1.3 Interactions Between SM R97 and SM R99

The SM protocol shall be backward compatible.

11.1.4 Interactions Between MAP R97 and MAP R99

The MAP protocol shall be backward compatible to allow interworking between HLRs and SGSNs that support different releases.

12 Transmission

12.1 Transmission Modes

In GSM, the LLC and RLC protocols offer various transmission modes. The combinations of the LLC and RLC transmission modes define the QoS attributes SDU error ratio and residual bit error ratio.

In UMTS, the RLC protocol provides various transmission modes to support user data transmission with different QoS.

The RLC protocol for GSM and the RLC protocol for UMTS are distinct protocols of different Radio Access Networks.

12.1.1 GTP-U Transmission Modes

One mode of operation of the GTP-U layer is supported for information transfer between the GGSN and SGSN; unacknowledged (UDP/IP). In UMTS, GTP-U is also used on the Iu interface for user data transport. Only the unacknowledged mode (UDP/IP) is supported on the Iu interface.

12.1.2 LLC Transmission Modes (GSM Only)

Two modes of operation of the LLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The LLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

- In acknowledged mode, the receipt of LL-PDUs are confirmed. The LLC layer retransmits LL-PDUs if confirmation has not been received within a timeout period.
- In unacknowledged mode, there is no confirmation required for LL-PDUs.

Signalling and SMS shall be transferred in unacknowledged mode.

In unacknowledged mode, the LLC layer shall offer the following two options:

- transport of "protected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field result in the frame being discarded; and
- transport of "unprotected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field do not result in the frame being discarded.

The LLC layer shall support several different QoS traffic classes with different transfer delay characteristics.

12.1.3 RLC Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the RLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The RLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

The RLC for GSM is described in GSM 04.60, and for UMTS in 3G TS 25.322.

12.2 Logical Link Control Functionality (GSM Only)

The Logical Link Control (LLC) protocol provides a reliable logical link between the MS and its SGSN. As shown in subclause "User and Control Planes", the LLC layer is situated below the SNDC layer.

12.2.1 Addressing

TLLI is used for addressing at the LLC layer. TLLI is described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS".

12.2.2 Services

LLC provides the services necessary to maintain a ciphered data link between an MS and an SGSN. The LLC layer does not support direct communication between two MSs.

The LLC connection is maintained as the MS moves between cells served by the same SGSN. When the MS moves to a cell being served by a different SGSN, the existing connection is released and a new logical connection is established with the new SGSN.

LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols. In order to allow LLC to operate with a variety of different radio interface protocols, and to ensure optimum performance, it may be necessary to adjust e.g., the maximum LLC PDU length and the LLC protocol timer values. Such adjustments can be made through negotiation between the MS and the SGSN. The maximum length of an LLC PDU shall not be greater than 1 600 octets minus the BSSGP protocol control information.

12.2.3 Functions

The Logical Link Control layer supports:

- service primitives allowing the transfer of SNDCP Protocol Data Units (SN-PDUs) between the Subnetwork Dependent Convergence layer and the Logical Link Control layer;
- procedures for transferring LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN, including:
 - procedures for unacknowledged delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
 - procedures for acknowledged, reliable delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN;
- procedures for detecting and recovering from lost or corrupted LL-PDUs;
- procedures for flow control of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
- procedures for ciphering of LL-PDUs. The procedures are applicable to both unacknowledged and acknowledged LL-PDU delivery.

The layer functions are organised in such a way that ciphering resides immediately above the RLC/MAC layer in the MS, and immediately above the BSSGP layer in the SGSN.

12.3 Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Functionality (GSM Only)

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence (SNDC) protocol is situated below the network layer and above the Logical Link Control layer in the MS and the SGSN, as shown in subclause "User and Control Planes". A variety of network layers are supported, e.g., IP. The network-layer packet data protocols share the same SNDCP, that then performs multiplexing of data coming from the different sources to be sent across LLC. This is illustrated in Figure 76.

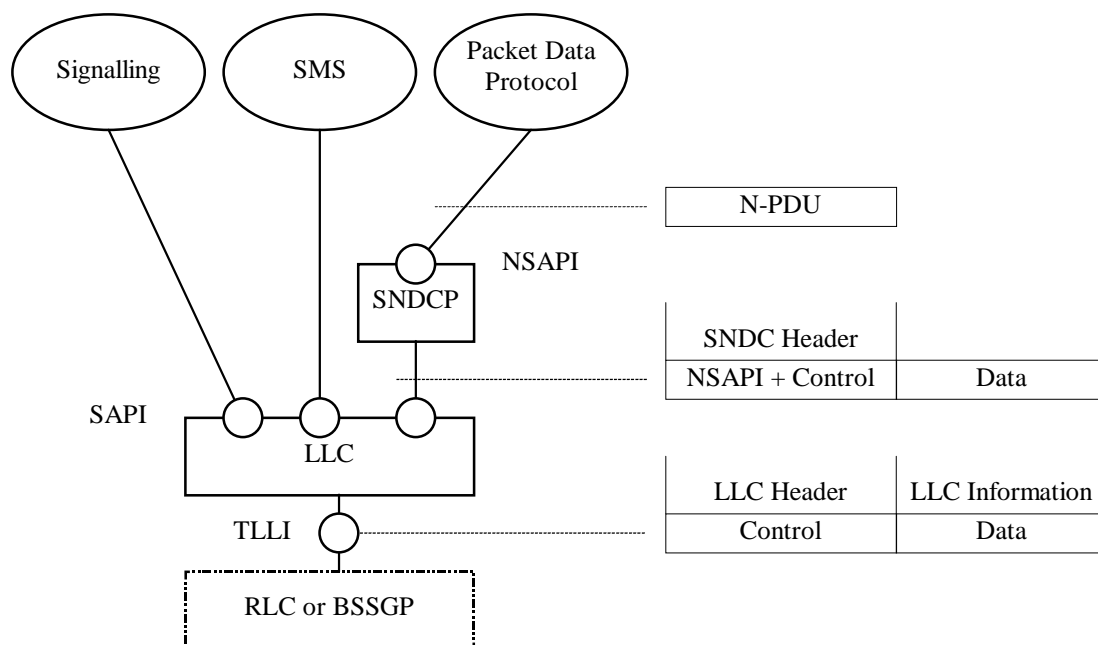


Figure 76: Multiplexing of Network Protocols

The following identities and control information is needed:

- NSAPI identifies the network layer. The SNDCP control part contains compression information.
- TLLI identifies the MS. The LLC control part contains the rest of the LLC protocol header including ciphering information.

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence function is defined in terms of offered services and sub-functions.

12.3.1 Services

The SNDC function provides the following services to the network layer:

- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs in acknowledged and unacknowledged LLC mode. In acknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall be confirmed at the LLC layer, and the data shall be transmitted and received in order per NSAPI. In unacknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall not be confirmed at the SNDCP layer nor at the LLC layer.
- Transmission and reception between the MS and SGSN of variable-length N-PDUs.
- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs between the SGSN and MS according to the negotiated QoS profile.
- Transfer of the minimum amount of data possible between the SGSN and MS through compression techniques.

The SNDC function requires the following services from the LLC layer:

- Acknowledged and unacknowledged data transfer.

- Ciphered transmission of SN-PDUs.
- In-order delivery of SN-PDUs per LLC SAPI.
- Support for variable-length SN-PDUs.

12.3.2 Subfunctions

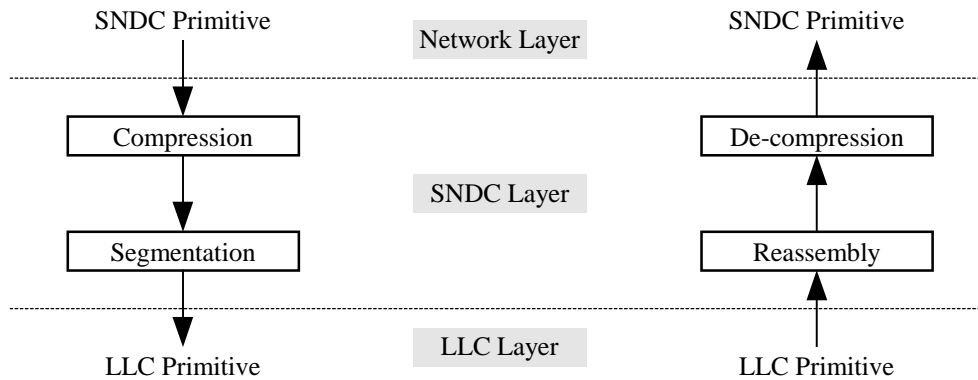


Figure 77: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality

SNDCP performs the following subfunctions:

- Mapping of SNDC primitives received from the network layer into corresponding LLC primitives to be passed to the LLC layer, and vice versa.
- Multiplexing of N-PDUs from one or several NSAPIs onto one LLC SAPI. NSAPIs that are multiplexed onto the same SAPI shall use the same radio priority level, QoS traffic handling priority, and traffic class.
- Compression of redundant protocol control information and user data. This may include e.g., TCP/IP header compression and V.42 bis [32] data compression. Compression may be performed independently for each QoS traffic handling priority and traffic class. If several network layers use the same QoS traffic handling priority and traffic class, then one common compressor may be used for these network layers. The relationship between NSAPIs, compressors, and SAPIs is defined in GSM 04.65. Compression parameters are negotiated between the MS and the SGSN. Compression is an optional SNDC function.
- Segmentation and reassembly. The output of the compression subfunctions are segmented to maximum-length LLC frames.

12.4 PDCP (UMTS Only)

The Packet Data Compatibility Protocol (PDCP) transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. PDCP can support several network layer protocols by providing protocol transparency for the users of the service. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is located in the MS and the UTRAN and described in 3G TS 25.323.

12.5 Octet Stream Protocol Functionality

The Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) is used to carry an unstructured octet (character) stream between the MS and GGSN. It is used to provide a character pipe to allow an MS to communicate (via the GGSN) with an arbitrary Internet host, or other character-based service. PDP type shall be selected as OSP for this purpose. Unlike PDP type IP, OSP has no existence outside the PLMN. In the MS there is a character stream at the R reference point together with some optional control signals. In the GGSN there is a relay function, carrying the same character stream and control signals between OSP and a fixed-network protocol stack.

OSP has two modes of operation. In octet mode, it uses a Packet Assembly function to assemble a number of user octets into a single packet for more efficient transport by the underlying protocols. A complementary Packet Disassembly function performs the reverse operation in the peer OSP. In block mode, the Packet Assembly / Disassembly (PAD)

function is bypassed. In this case, data is transferred between the OSP user and OSP in blocks of octets. Each block of octets is delivered as a single OSP PDU to the underlying protocol. The selection of octet or block mode is made independently for each OSP connection as an implementation or configuration decision before the connection is established, and remains fixed for the duration of the connection. An example of the use of the block mode is when OSP is used for interworking with a fixed network where the octets are also carried in packets. This avoids the use of back-to-back PADs. It could also be used in an embedded MT where the application transfers data in blocks of octets.

The quality of service is determined mainly by that provided by the underlying layers. However, the end-to-end delay may be affected by the presence of the PAD function. A reliable (acknowledged) service shall be provided by the layers below SNDCCP.

The main functions of OSP are:

- transport of an unstructured octet stream;
- packet assembly and disassembly to make efficient use of network resources; and
- end-to-end flow control.

OSP may additionally provide:

- transport of a "break" signal;
- transport of control information blocks between the OSP users;
- user control of packet assembly buffer forwarding; and
- direct OSP user access to the underlying packet service, bypassing the PAD.

Figure 78 illustrates the OSP user plane for GPRS, and Figure 79 for UMTS.

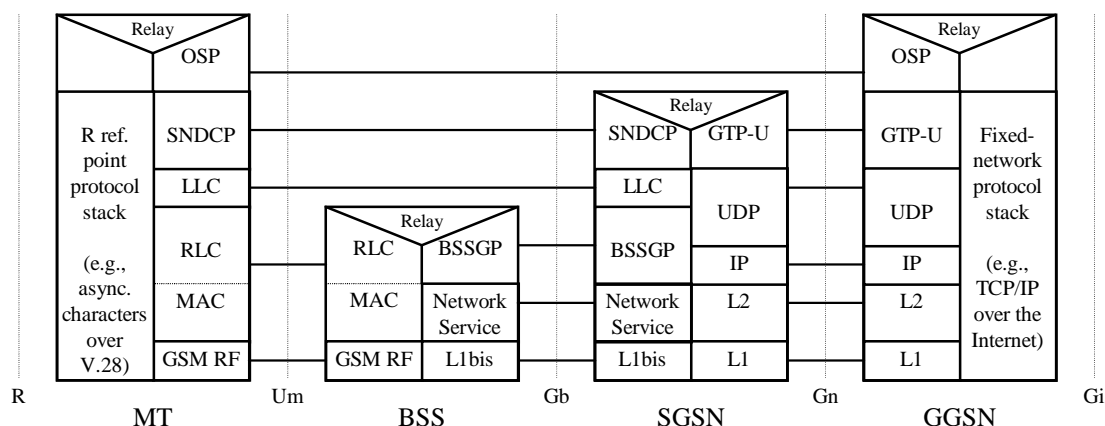


Figure 78: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

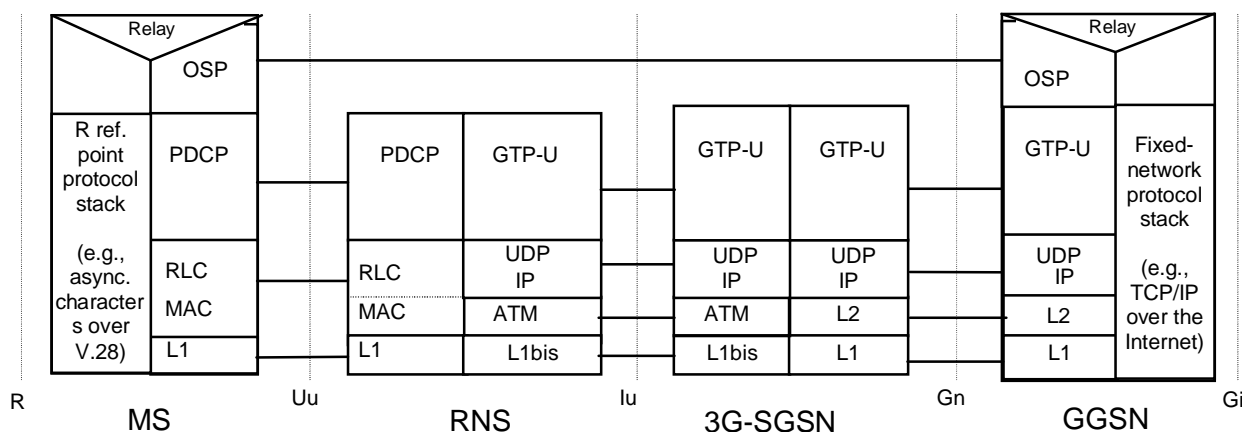


Figure 79: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

12.5.1 PAD Function

In order to make efficient use of the network resources, particularly the radio resource, octets received from the OSP user are not forwarded immediately but are placed in a buffer. When some forwarding criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer are forwarded in the payload of an N-PDU to the underlying layer. At the receiving end, the payload of an N-PDU received from the underlying layer is placed in a buffer and the octets are delivered to the OSP user as an octet stream.

The PAD is used only when OSP operates in octet mode. It is not used when OSP operates in block mode.

12.5.1.1 Packet Assembler

The packet assembler shall be able to detect the following forwarding criteria. When any one criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer shall be forwarded in an N-PDU to the underlying layer, subject to any flow control condition.

12.5.1.1.1 Buffer Full

The buffer contents are forwarded when the number of octets in the buffer reaches the value of the maximum buffer size parameter.

12.5.1.1.2 Inactivity Timer Expiry

The inactivity timer shall be started whenever an octet is placed in the buffer. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. The inactivity timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.3 Maximum Buffer Delay Timer Expiry

A maximum buffer delay timer may be started when the first octet is placed in the (empty) buffer. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. This optional timer ensures that no octet is delayed in the buffer for longer than the specified time. The maximum buffer delay timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.4 Special Character

Whenever an octet has been placed in the buffer, its least significant 7 bits shall be compared with a list of 7-bit special characters. If the bits match, the buffer shall be forwarded. The possible characters and combinations of characters shall be the same as specified for the X.3 [33] PAD access to X.25.

12.5.1.1.5 Change in Flow Control State

The buffer may be forwarded when there is a need to signal a change in the ready to receive condition.

12.5.1.1.6 Immediate Forwarding Request

When the OSP receives an immediate forward request from its user, it shall immediately forward the buffer unless it is empty.

12.5.1.2 Packet Disassembler

The packet disassembler shall forward the contents of the N-PDU payload to the OSP user, subject to any local flow control condition.

12.5.2 Quality of Service

The QoS provided by the OSP layer is determined by that provided by the underlying protocol layers. However, the PAD functions introduce an additional variable delay into the transmission path. This delay can be limited at the risk of making less efficient use of network resources, in particular the radio resources.

12.6 Point-to-Point Protocol Functionality

The PPP protocol is specified in RFC 1661 [44].

12.6.1 User Plane for PDP Type PPP

The user plane for the PDP type PPP consists of a PPP protocol stack above SNDCP for GSM or above PDCP for UMTS in the MS, and above GTP in the GGSN. The GGSN may either terminate the PPP protocol and access the packet data network at the IP level, or further tunnel PPP PDUs via e.g., L2TP.

In case the application above PPP uses a different protocol than IP (e.g., IPX or AppleTalk), the interconnection to the packet data network is outside the scope of this specification.

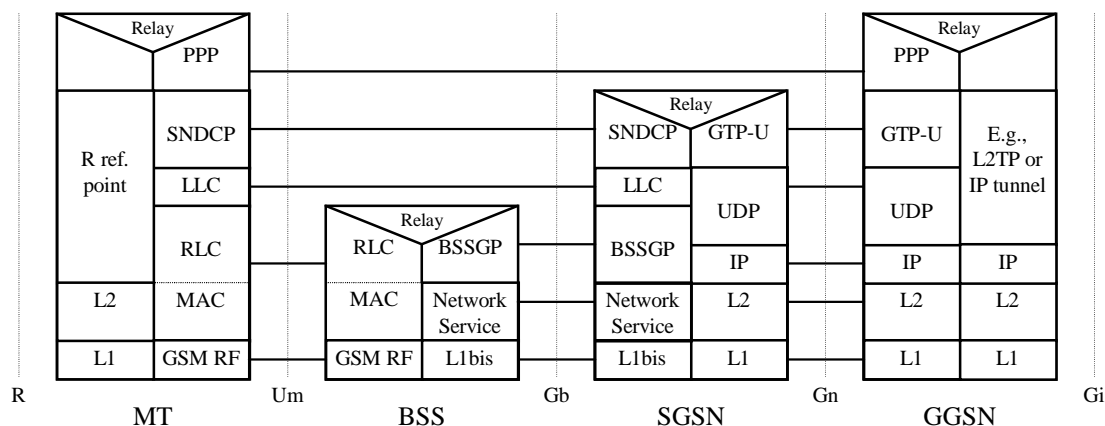


Figure 80: GSM User Plane for PDP Type PPP

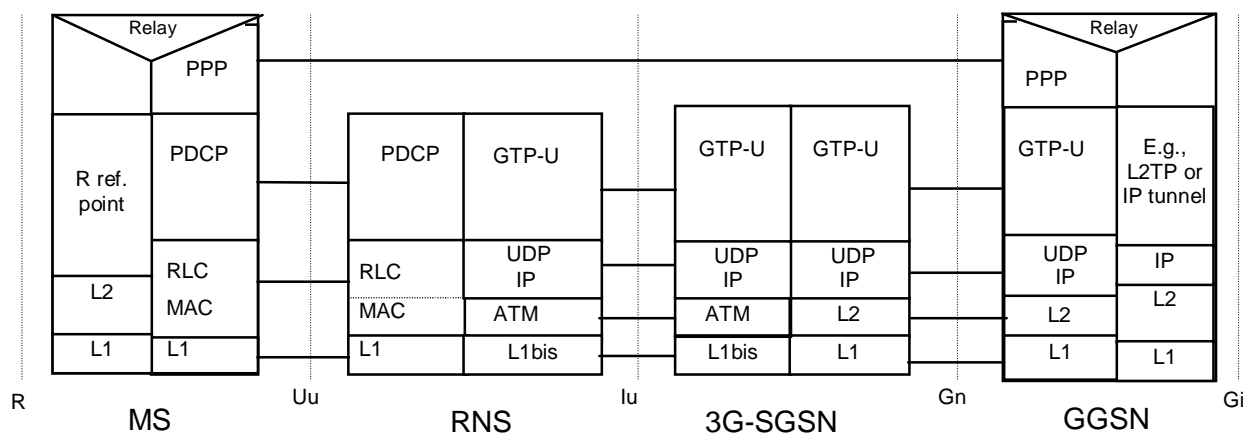


Figure 81: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

12.6.2 Functions

The PPP peers at the MS and GGSN handle the PPP protocol as specified in RFC 1661. PPP requires in-sequence packet delivery by the underlying protocols. Concerning GTP, this shall be achieved by negotiation of the delivery order attribute in the QoS profile upon PDP context activation. In GSM, concerning SNDCP, out-of-sequence packets, that may be present if LLC operates in unacknowledged mode, shall be discarded. SNDCP for GSM, and PDCP for UMTS, shall not use TCP/IP header compression because PPP may not carry IP packets at all, or because PPP may carry IP packets with already compressed TCP/IP headers. These PPP options are negotiated during the RFC 1661 Network Control Protocol establishment phase.

12.7 Gb Interface (GSM Only)

The Gb interface connects the BSS and the SGSN, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The Gb interface shall allow many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter. This is in contrast to the A interface where a single user has the sole use of a dedicated physical resource throughout the lifetime of a call irrespective of activity.

GSM signalling and user data are sent in the same user plane. No dedicated physical resources are required to be allocated for signalling purposes.

Access rates per user may vary without restriction from zero data to the maximum possible line rate (e.g., 1 984 kbit/s for the available bitrate of an E1 trunk).

12.7.1 Physical Layer Protocol

Several physical layer configurations and protocols are possible, as defined in GSM 08.14 [19].

The physical resources shall be allocated by O&M procedures.

12.7.2 Link Layer Protocols

The Gb interface link layer is based on Frame Relay, as defined in GSM 08.16. Frame Relay virtual circuits are established between SGSN and BSS. LLC PDUs from many users are multiplexed on these virtual circuits. The virtual circuits may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. Frame Relay shall be used for signalling and data transmission.

The following characteristics apply for the Frame Relay connection:

- The maximum Frame Relay information field size shall be 1 600 octets.
- The Frame Relay address length shall be 2 octets.
- The BSS and the SGSN shall both implement Frame Relay DTE functionality. The SGSN may optionally also implement DCE functionality.
- Frame Relay PVCs shall be used.
- The Frame Relay layer offers detection of but no recovery from transmission errors.
- One or more Frame Relay PVCs shall be used between one SGSN and one BSS to transport BSSGP PDUs.

12.7.3 BSS GPRS Protocol

The primary function of BSSGP is to provide the radio-related, QoS, and routing information that is required to transmit user data between a BSS and an SGSN. In the BSS, it acts as an interface between LLC frames and RLC/MAC blocks. In the SGSN, it forms an interface between RLC/MAC-derived information and LLC frames. A secondary function is to enable two physically distinct nodes, the SGSN and BSS, to operate node management control functions.

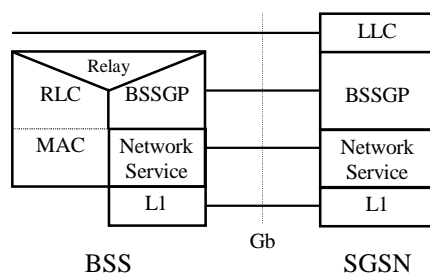


Figure 82: BSSGP Protocol Position

There is a one-to-one relationship between the BSSGP protocol in the SGSN and in the BSS. If one SGSN handles multiple BSSs, the SGSN has to have one BSSGP protocol machine for each BSS.

The main functions for the BSSGP protocol are to:

- provide a connection-less link between the SGSN and the BSS;
- transfer data unconfirmed between the SGSN and the BSS;
- provide tools for bi-directional control of the flow of data between the SGSN and the BSS;
- handle paging requests from the SGSN to the BSS;
- give support for flushing of old messages in the BSS e.g., when an MS changes BSS; and
- support multiple layer 2 links between the SGSN and one BSS.

BSSGP is defined in GSM 08.18.

12.7.3.1 Inter-dependency of the BSSGP and LLC Functions

The functions of the BSSGP shall be defined in the context of the LLC function in order to avoid duplication of functions and information flows. The following functional model indicates each layer's functional responsibilities.

Table 4: Mapping of High-level Functions Across the Gb Architecture

| Network Node and Function | MS | BSS | SGSN |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LLC: GSM 04.64 | Same as for the SGSN. | | Provides transfer of frames between the SGSN and MS. |
| BSSGP: GSM 08.18 | | <p>MS←PLMN: Using BSSGP information, RLC/MAC operations are invoked.</p> <p>MS→PLMN: Using RLC/MAC-derived information, a BSSGP PDU is constructed. An identifier of the cell including RAC and LAC in which an LLC frame was received is inserted into the BSSGP PDU.</p> <p>Same as for SGSN.</p> | <p>Individual MS radio-related information is used by the BSS to transfer LLC frames across the Gb and Um.</p> <p>Provides flow control and unconfirmed data delivery services across the Gb interface (not the Um – this is the function of the LLC and RLC/MAC function).</p> <p>Provides SGSN-BSS node management functions.</p> |
| Network Service: GSM 08.16 | | Same as for SGSN | Provides a multiplexing, variable-bandwidth, frame-based, link layer transport mechanism across the Gb interface, and load balancing. |

12.7.3.2 BSSGP Addressing

For information transfer between the SGSN and the BSS the BSSGP is using a BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier (BVCI) for addressing. Additionally, QoS profile, and the MS identification, e.g., TLLI, may be used to create queues and contexts in both the SGSN and the BSS. The flow control mechanism is then based on these queues and contexts.

12.7.3.3 BVCI Contexts in BSS and in SGSN

A BVCI context in the BSS consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and of the available radio resource capacity.

The BVCI context in the BSS is allocated for each cell supporting GPRS. For each new GPRS cell introduced in the BSS area, a new BVCI context shall be allocated.

In the SGSN the BVCI context consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and the allowed throughput on BSSGP. The allowed throughput is updated by BSSGP flow control messages.

12.7.3.4 Flow Control Between SGSN and BSS over the Gb Interface

The flow control mechanism controls the loading of the BSS LLC PDU queues per BVCI and per MS between the SGSN and the BSS in the downlink direction. No flow control is performed in the uplink direction. Buffers and link capacity shall be dimensioned to avoid loss of uplink data.

The downlink flow control mechanism is based on the following principles:

- In the SGSN, queues for LLC PDUs are provided per BVCI. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per packet flow. The SGSN shall pass LLC PDUs to LLC via BSSGP to the BSS as long as the allowed BSSGP throughput is not exceeded. The allowed BSSGP throughput is given per BVCI and for a single MS on that BVCI. The SGSN schedules the BSSGP downlink traffic of all MSs of a BVCI according to the maximum and guaranteed bitrate attributes and to the QoS profile related to each LLC PDU. The scheduling algorithm is implementation dependent.
- In the BSS, queues per BVCI are provided at the BSSGP level. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per packet flow. Depending on the queuing conditions and the available radio resource capacity in the cell the BSS indicates the allowed BSSGP throughput per BVCI and the default allowed BSSGP throughput for each individual MS of that BVCI by BSSGP flow control messages to the SGSN. Additionally, the BSS may change the allowed BSSGP throughput for an individual MS by a BSSGP flow control message.

12.7.3.5 BSS Context

The SGSN can provide a BSS with information related to ongoing user data transmission. The information related to one MS is stored in a BSS context. The BSS may contain BSS contexts for several MSs. A BSS context contains a number of BSS packet flow contexts. Each BSS packet flow context is identified by a packet flow identifier assigned by the SGSN. A BSS packet flow context is shared by one or more activated PDP contexts with identical or similar negotiated QoS profiles. The data transmission related to PDP contexts that share the same BSS packet flow context constitute one packet flow.

Three packet flows are pre-defined, and identified by three reserved packet flow identifier values. The BSS shall not negotiate BSS packet flow contexts for these pre-defined packet flows with the SGSN. One pre-defined packet flow is used for best-effort service, one is used for SMS, and one is used for signalling. The SGSN can assign the best-effort or SMS packet flow identifier to any PDP context. In the SMS case, the BSS shall handle the packet flow for the PDP context with the same QoS that it handles SMS with.

The combined BSS QoS profile for the PDP contexts that share the same packet flow is called the aggregate BSS QoS profile. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes as defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". It defines the QoS that must be provided by the BSS for a given packet flow between the MS and the SGSN, i.e., for the Um and Gb interfaces combined. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is negotiated between the SGSN and the BSS.

A BSS packet flow timer indicates the maximum time that the BSS may store the BSS packet flow context. The BSS packet flow timer shall not exceed the value of the READY timer for this MS. The BSS packet flow timer is started when the BSS packet flow context is stored in the BSS and when an LLC frame is received from the MS. When the BSS packet flow timer expires the BSS shall delete the BSS packet flow context.

When a PDP context is activated, modified, or deactivated, the SGSN may create, modify, or delete BSS packet flow contexts.

12.7.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

On receiving a request to transmit an uplink or downlink LLC PDU for which no BSS packet flow context exists in the BSS, the BSS may request the download of the BSS packet flow context from the SGSN.

The SGSN may at any time request the creation of a BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation of a PDP context.

The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure is illustrated in Figure 83.

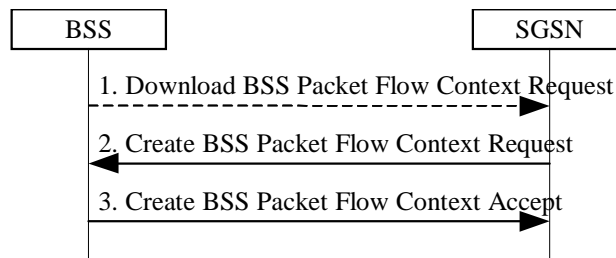


Figure 83: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

- 1) The BSS receives a request to transfer an uplink or downlink user data LLC PDU for which it currently does not have a BSS packet flow context. In the uplink case, TLLI, Radio Priority, and Packet Flow Id are received from the MS as defined in GSM 04.60. In the downlink case, TLLI and Packet Flow Id are received from the SGSN as defined in GSM 08.18. If Packet Flow Id does not indicate best-effort service nor SMS, then the BSS sends a Download BSS Packet Flow Context Request (RAI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN. Until the BSS receives the BSS packet flow context, the BSS shall handle uplink and downlink transfers according to a default aggregate BSS QoS profile. For uplink transfers, the default profile is specific to the radio priority level.
- 2) The SGSN sends a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the associated BSS. The SGSN derives Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested from the QoS profile negotiated for the PDP contexts that share a packet flow as follows: The SGSN shall divide the transfer delay attribute in the QoS profile in one core network part and one BSS part. The SGSN estimates the transfer delay in the core network and subtracts this from the UMTS bearer service transfer delay. The result only covers the delay in the MS to SGSN segment of the GPRS PLMN. Since the BSS transports LLC PDUs obtained after segmentation of SDUs by the SMDCP layer, the SGSN shall convert the values of the UMTS bearer service attributes maximum SDU size, SDU error ratio, residual bit error ration, maximum bitrate, guaranteed bitrate and the resulting transfer delay to values applicable to the LLC PDUs. All other attributes in Aggregate BSS QoS Profile shall be the same as the corresponding UMTS bearer service attribute, see 3G TS 23.107.
- 3) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS creates a BSS packet flow context and inserts the parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN. The BSS uses the negotiated aggregate BSS QoS profile when allocating radio resources and other resources such as buffer capacity.

12.7.3.5.2 SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN may at any time request the modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation, modification, or deactivation of a PDP context. The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure shall be used in this case, and the BSS shall instead of creating a BSS packet flow context overwrite the existing parameters with the modified parameters.

12.7.3.5.3 BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The BSS can at any time request modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to a change in the resource availability at the BSS.

The BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 84.

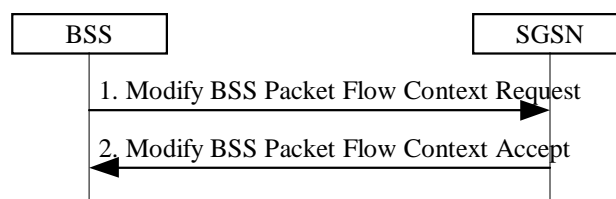


Figure 84: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

- 1) The BSS sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested) message to the SGSN.
- 2) The SGSN may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context.

12.7.3.5.4 BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures

The BSS can, due to e.g., memory restrictions, at any time delete a BSS packet flow context without notifying the SGSN.

The SGSN may request the deletion of a BSS packet flow context with the SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion procedure, as illustrated in Figure 85.

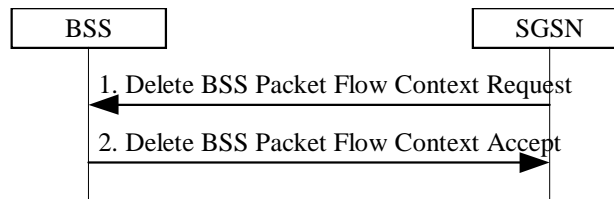


Figure 85: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure

- 1) The SGSN sends a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id) message to the BSS. The BSS deletes the corresponding BSS packet flow context from its BSS context.
- 2) The BSS returns a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN.

12.8 Iu Interface (UMTS Only)

The Iu interface connects the UTRAN and the Core Network packet domain, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The user plane of Iu interface shall allow user data from many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter.

In UMTS only user data is transmitted on this shared physical medium. Signalling data is transferred via an SCCP connection. A reference configuration for Iu interface user plane is given in Figure 86.

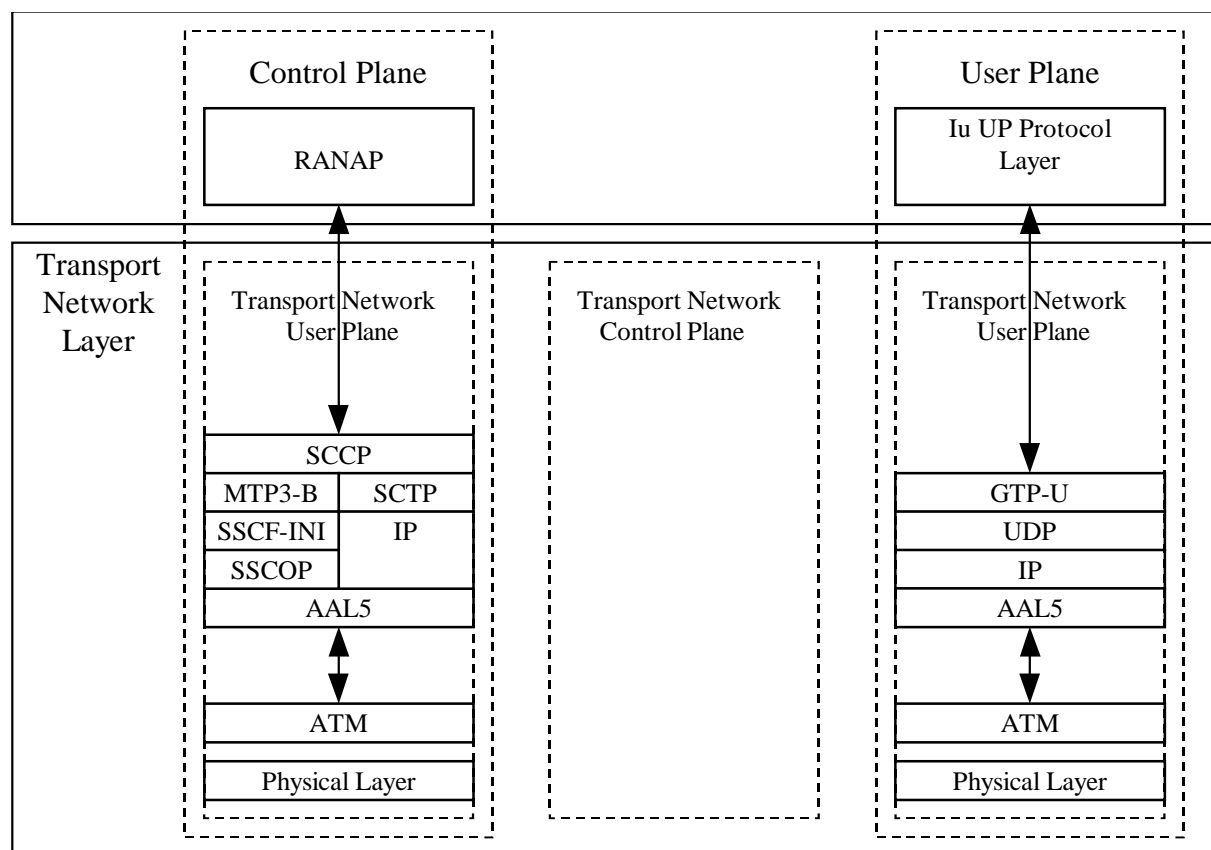


Figure 86: Iu User Plane Protocol Configuration for Packet-Switched Traffic

12.8.1 Physical Layer Protocols

The physical layer shall comply with one of a wide range of standards, according to 3G TS 25.411. Services provided to the upper layer shall be independent from the used underlying technology.

12.8.2 Higher-Layer Protocols

12.8.2.1 Higher-Layer Protocols for User Data Transport

The GTP-U protocol shall be used over the Iu interface between the packet switched domain and the RNS.

The path protocol used shall be UDP, as specified in RFC 768. The IPv4 (RFC 791) protocol shall be supported, IPv6 (RFC 2460) support is optional.

AAL5 shall be used according to I.363.5.

AAL5 permanent or switched virtual circuits are used to transport the IP packets across the Iu interface between RNS and the packet switched core network domain. Multiple VCs can be used over the Iu interface.

IP over ATM protocols are used to carry the IP packets over the ATM transport network. IP over ATM is specified in RFC 2225. Multiprotocol Encapsulation over AAL5 is specified in RFC 1483.

The Iu interface protocol stack is described in more detailed in 3G TS 25.414.

12.8.2.1.1 Consistent Sequence Numbering of PDUs on Iu and Gn Interfaces

The GTP-U PDU sequence numbers allocated by the GGSN (downlink) and SRNS (uplink) are kept unchanged irrespective of the number of GTP tunnels the PDU is transferred over. Therefore, SGSN shall use on the Iu interface for downlink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the GGSN, and shall use on the Gn interface for uplink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the SRNS. In case of SRNS relocation and intersystem change, the SRNS and SGSN shall tunnel PDUs without changing the GTP-U sequence numbers.

12.8.2.2 Higher-Layer Protocols for Signalling Transport

The protocol stack for signalling transport is based on ATM/AAL5. Two AAL5 signalling transport services options are available to provide services for the SCCP layer.

The first option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses SSCOP for reliability reasons. SSCF provides the adaptation to upper layers. MTP3-B is the network layer protocol.

The second option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses IP as the network layer. SCTP performs the adaptation of the IP layer and provides services to the SCCP layer.

12.8.3 Iu Release Procedure

This procedure is used to release the Iu interface. This procedure also triggers the release of all the Iu connections and changes the 3G-SGSN PMM state to PMM-IDLE. Both RNC-initiated and SGSN-initiated Iu release procedures are showed in Figure 87.

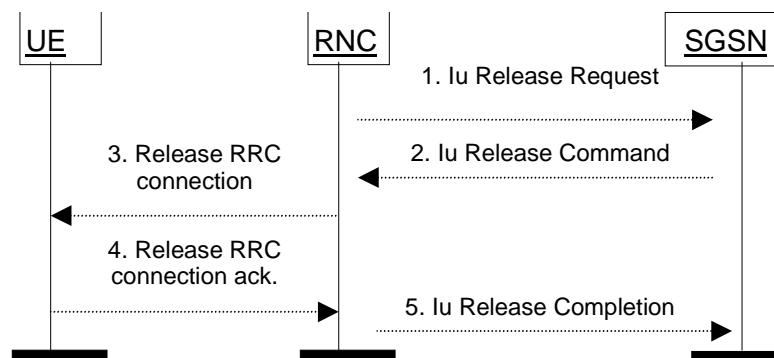


Figure 87: Iu Release Procedure

NOTE 1: Message 1 is only sent when the RNC-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

NOTE 2: Message 1 is not sent but message 2 is sent when the SGSN-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

- 1) The RNC notices that the RRC connection has been released or detects a need to release the radio resources. It sends an Iu Release Request (Cause) message to the SGSN. Cause indicates the reason for the release (O&M Intervention, Equipment Failure, Implicit Release, or Resource Optimisation). Implicit Release means that the periodic URA update timer expired. Resource Optimisation means that RNC decided to release an MS with only a non real-time bearer established to optimise the radio usage after the RRC-Connection-Release timer expired.
- 2) The SGSN releases the Iu by sending the Iu Release Command (Cause) message to the RNC. This message may be triggered either by an Iu Release Request message, or by another SGSN event (e.g., authentication failure or detach). It is optional for the SGSN to send the Iu Release Command message after an Iu Release Request message with Cause set to Resource Optimisation is received from the RNC.
- 3) If the RRC connection is not already released (Cause = Resource Optimisation), then the RNC sends a Release RRC Connection message to the MS. [Cause "Detach" or "Authentication failure are FFS].
- 4) The MS returns a Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message to the RNC.
- 5) The RNC confirms the Iu release by returning an Iu Release Completion message to the SGSN.

If the RNC does not receive the Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message and if Cause is different from Authentication Failure or Detach, then it should send a failure message to the SGSN, and the SGSN should stay in the MM-CONNECTED state.

After Iu release, the MS and SGSN shall modify PDP context(s) that use streaming or conversational traffic class according to the rules in subclause "RNC-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure".

12.8.4 RAB Assignment Procedure

The purpose of the RAB Assignment procedure is to enable establishment of new RABs for a given MS and/or modification and/or release of already established RABs. When this procedure is executed and if there is any PDP context without radio access bearer assigned, all the radio access bearer are re-established. The same messages are used for the three mentioned actions and it is only the content carried by the messages that is different. The RAB Assignment procedure, which is shown below, is specified in 3G TS 25.413. The RRC protocol is specified in 3G TS 25.331.

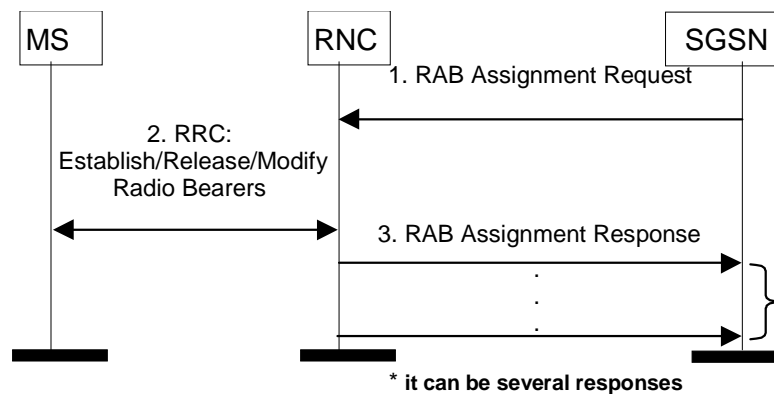


Figure 88: RAB Assignment Procedure

- 1) The SGSN sends a RAB Assignment Request message to the RNC to establish, modify, or release one or several RABs. For each RAB requested to be established or modified, if the RAB is allowed for queuing and the resource situation requires it, the RNC may place the RAB in the establishment queue.
- 2) The RNC establishes, modifies, or releases the appropriate radio bearers.
- 3) The RNC returns a RAB Assignment Response message to the SGSN. If the request to establish or modify one or several RABs has been queued, the RNC will report the outcome of the establishment or modification in subsequent RAB Assignment Response messages. If the SGSN receives a RAB Assignment Response message with a cause indicating that the requested QoS profile(s) can not be provided (e.g., "Requested Maximum Bit Rate not Available"), then the SGSN may send a new RAB Assignment Request message with different QoS profile(s). The number of re-attempts, if any, as well as how the new QoS profile(s) values are determined is implementation dependent.

12.8.5 Location Reporting Procedure

This procedure is used by a 3G-SGSN to request the SRNC to report where the MS is currently located, or to report when the MS moves into or out of a given service area. This procedure relates to location services (LCS) and other services (e.g., CAMEL and emergency calls) in UMTS. The overall LCS procedure is to be described in the LCS stage-2 specification, see 3G TS 23.171.

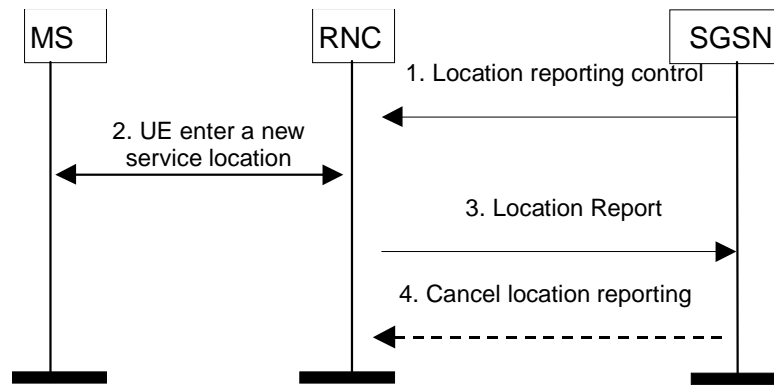


Figure 89: Location Reporting Procedure

- 1) The SGSN detects from the subscriber data the need to monitor in which service area an MS in the PMM-CONNECTED state with an Iu interface connection is located. The SGSN sends a Location Reporting Control (Service Area Code(s), Reporting Type) message to the SRNC. The SRNC stores the Service Area Code(s) as reporting area(s) for this MS. For example, a service area may be a location area with restricted access. Reporting Type indicates whether the message is intended to start a reporting period or trigger a stand-alone report about the current location of the MS.
- 2) The SRNC detects that the MS moves into or out of a reporting area. Alternatively, the SRNC derives the current location of the MS if this was requested by the SGSN.
- 3) The SRNC sends a Location Report (Service Area Code) message informing the 3G-SGSN about where the MS is now located. If no Service Area Code is included, it indicates that the MS is outside the requested service area. When the SGSN has requested the current location of the MS, then SRNC shall include the requested location information in the Location Report message, e.g., in the format of a cell id. The SGSN may then perform specific actions (e.g., detach a MS entering a forbidden location area or route an emergency call to the nearest local emergency number).
- 4) The SGSN can send a Cancel Location Reporting message to inform the SRNC that it should terminate location reporting for a given MS. This message is needed only when the reporting was requested for a reporting period.

The procedure is implicitly cancelled at SRNC relocation. If the service is still required in the new SRNC or new SGSN then a new Location Reporting Control message shall be sent.

12.9 Abis Interface (GSM Only)

When the MAC and RLC layer functions are positioned remote to the BTS, the information between the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) and the remote GSM Packet Control Unit (PCU) is transferred in frames with a fixed length of 320 bits (20 ms). In the present document these frames are denoted "PCU Frames" and are an extension to the "TRAU frames" defined in GSM 08.60 [22]. Within these frames both GPRS data and the RLC/MAC associated control signals are transferred.

The Abis interface should be the same if the PCU is positioned at the BSC site (option B in Figure 90) or at the SGSN site (option C in Figure 90). In option B, the PCU could be implemented as an adjunct unit to the BSC. In option C, the BSC should be considered as transparent for 16 kbit/s channels. In configurations B and C the PCU is referred to as being a remote PCU.

The remote PCU is considered a part of the BSC, and the signalling between the BSC and the PCU may be performed by using BSC internal signals. The inband signalling between the CCU and the PCU functions, using PCU frames is required when the Abis interface is applied (options B and C in Figure 90).

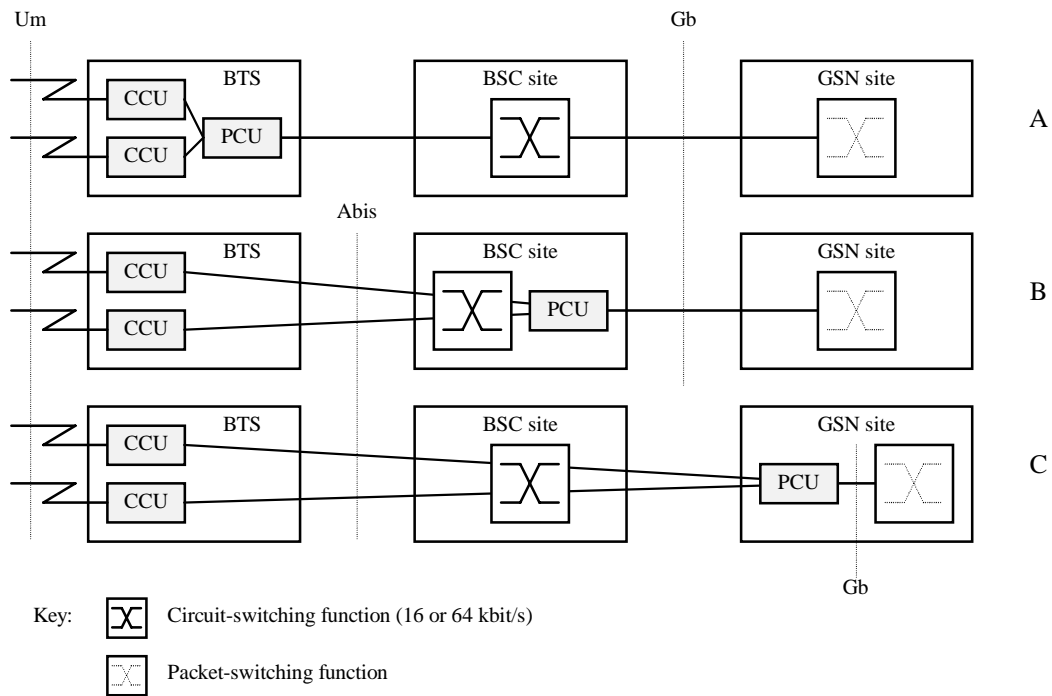


Figure 90: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions

The PCU is responsible for the following MAC and RLC layer functions as defined in GSM 03.64:

- LLC layer PDU segmentation into RLC blocks for downlink transmission;
- LLC layer PDU reassembly from RLC blocks for uplink transmissions;
- PDCH scheduling functions for the uplink and downlink data transfers;
- PDCH uplink ARQ functions, including RLC block ack / nak;
- PDCH downlink ARQ function, including buffering and retransmission of RLC blocks;
- channel access control functions, e.g., access requests and grants; and
- radio channel management functions, e.g., power control, congestion control, broadcast control information, etc.

The functions inside the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) are:

- the channel coding functions, including FEC and interleaving;
- radio channel measurement functions, including received quality level, received signal level and information related to timing advance measurements; and
- for EGPRS, in case of incremental redundancy mode of operation, enhanced channel coding functions.

The BSS is responsible for allocation and de-allocation of radio resources. A PCU frame shall be transferred between the PCU and the CCU every 20 ms.

12.9.1 Remote Packet Control Unit

When the Packet Control Unit (PCU) is remote to the BTS, the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) in the BTS may control some of the functions in the remote PCU in the BSC. As well, the PCU may control some of the functions of the CCU. This remote control is performed by inband signalling carried by the control bits (C-bits) in each PCU frame.

13 Information Storage

This clause describes information storage structures required for the packet domain, and the recovery and restoration procedures needed to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information.

13.1 HLR

IMSI is the prime key to the packet domain subscription data stored in the HLR. There may be several sets of packet domain subscription data per IMSI. This is illustrated in Figure 91.

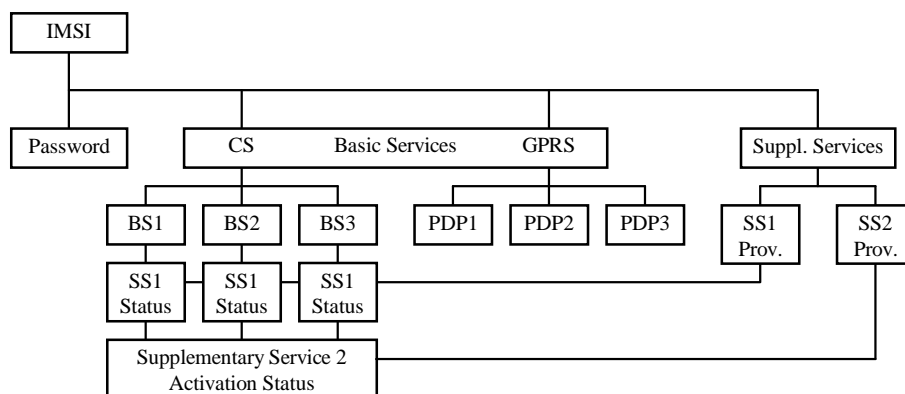


Figure 91: Packet Domain Subscription Data

As Figure 91 indicates, the packet domain subscription data is at the same level as basic services. Each PDP subscription is seen as a basic service. Supplementary services are provisioned as part of the overall subscription. Activation of SSs is either at the basic service level (SS1) or at the overall subscription level (SS2).

Table 5 shows the packet domain subscription data contained in the HLR.

Table 5: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data

| Field | Description | GSM | UMTS |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------|
| IMSI | IMSI is the main reference key. | X | X |
| MSISDN | The basic MSISDN of the MS. | X | X |
| SGSN Number | The SS7 number of the SGSN currently serving this MS. | X | X |
| SGSN Address | The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS. | X | X |
| Subscribed Charging Characteristics | The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription. | X | X |
| Trace Reference | Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace. | X | X |
| Trace Type | Indicates the type of trace, e.g., MSC/BSS trace, HLR trace, and/or SGSN/GGSN/BSS trace. | X | X |
| OMC Identity | Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s). | X | X |
| SMS Parameters | SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring. | X | X |
| MS PS Purged for GPRS | Indicates that the MM and PDP contexts of the MS are deleted from the SGSN. | X | X |
| MNRG | Indicates that the MS is not reachable through an SGSN, and that the MS is marked as not reachable at the SGSN and possibly at the GGSN. | X | X |
| GGSN-list | The GSN number and optional IP address pair related to the GGSN that shall be contacted when activity from the MS is detected and MNRG is set. The GSN number shall be either the number of the GGSN or the protocol-converting GSN as described in the subclauses "MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling" and "GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling". | X | X |
| Each IMSI contains zero or more of the following PDP context subscription records: | | | |
| PDP Context Identifier | Index of the PDP context. | X | X |
| PDP Type | PDP type, e.g., PPP or IP. | X | X |
| PDP Address | PDP address, e.g., an IP address. This field shall be empty if dynamic addressing is allowed. | X | X |
| Access Point Name | A label according to DNS naming conventions describing the access point to the external packet data network. | X | X |
| QoS Profile Subscribed | The quality of service profile subscribed. QoS Profile Subscribed is the default level if a particular QoS profile is not requested. | X | X |
| VPLMN Address Allowed | Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN. | X | X |
| GPRS-CSI | Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016 | X | X |
| PDP context Charging Characteristics | The charging characteristics of this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing. | X | X |

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in the STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. Table 6 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 6: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

| Field | Description | GSM | UMTS |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------|
| IMSI | IMSI is the main reference key. | X | X |
| MM State | Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED. | X | X |
| P-TMSI | Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity. | X | X |
| P-TMSI Signature | A signature used for identification checking purposes. | X | X |
| IMEI | International Mobile Equipment Identity | X | X |
| MSISDN | The basic MSISDN of the MS. | X | X |
| Routeing Area | Current routeing area. | X | X |
| Cell Identity | Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state. | X | |
| Cell Identity Age | Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN. | X | |
| Service Area Code | Last known SAC when initial UE message was received or Location Reporting procedure was executed. | | X |
| Service Area Code Age | Time elapsed since the last SAC was received at the 3G-SGSN. | | X |
| VLR Number | The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS. | X | X |
| New SGSN Address | The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to. | X | X |
| Authentication Triplets | Authentication and ciphering parameters. | X | X |
| Authentication Vectors | Authentication and ciphering parameters for UMTS. | | X |
| Kc | Currently used ciphering key. | X | |
| CKSN | Ciphering key sequence number of Kc. | X | |
| Ciphering algorithm | Selected ciphering algorithm. | X | |
| CK | Currently used ciphering key. | | X |
| IK | Currently used integrity key. | | X |
| KSI | Key Set Identifier. | | X |
| MS Radio Access Capability | MS radio access capabilities. | X | |
| MS Network Capability | MS network capabilities. | X | X |
| DRX Parameters | Discontinuous reception parameters. | X | |
| MNRG | Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR. | X | X |
| NGAF | Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR. | X | X |
| PPF | Indicates whether paging for PS and CS services can be initiated. | X | X |
| Subscribed Charging Characteristics | The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription. | X | X |
| Trace Reference | Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace. | X | X |
| Trace Type | Indicates the type of trace. | X | X |
| Trigger Id | Identifies the entity that initiated the trace. | X | X |
| OMC Identity | Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s). | X | X |
| SMS Parameters | SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring. | X | X |
| Recovery | Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery. | X | X |
| Radio Priority SMS | The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission. | X | |
| GPRS-CSI | Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016 | X | X |
| Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts: | | | |
| PDP Context Identifier | Index of the PDP context. | X | X |
| PDP State | Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE. | X | X |
| PDP Type | PDP type, e.g., PPP or IP. | X | X |
| PDP Address | PDP address, e.g., an IP address. | X | X |
| APN Subscribed | The APN received from the HLR. | X | X |
| APN in Use | The APN currently used. | X | X |
| NSAPI | Network layer Service Access Point Identifier. | X | X |
| TI | Transaction Identifier. | X | X |
| TEID for Gn/Gp | Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Gn and Gp interfaces. | X | X |
| TEID for Iu | Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Iu interface. | | X |
| GGSN Address in Use | The IP address of the GGSN currently used. | X | X |
| VPLMN Address Allowed | Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the | X | X |

| Field | Description | GSM | UMTS |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------|
| | VPLMN. | | |
| QoS Profile Subscribed | The quality of service profile subscribed. | X | X |
| QoS Profile Requested | The quality of service profile requested. | X | X |
| QoS Profile Negotiated | The quality of service profile negotiated. | X | X |
| Radio Priority | The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission. | X | |
| Packet Flow Id | Packet flow identifier. | X | |
| Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated | The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for the packet flow that this PDP context belongs to. | X | |
| Send N-PDU Number | SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS. | X | |
| Receive N-PDU Number | SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS. | X | |
| GTP-SND | GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS. | X | X |
| GTP-SNU | GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN. | X | X |
| PDCCP-SND | Sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence PDCCP-PDU to be sent to the MS. | | X |
| PDCCP-SNU | Sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence PDCCP-PDU expected from the MS. | | X |
| Charging Id | Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN. | X | X |
| PDP Context Charging Characteristics | The charging characteristics of this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing. | X | X |
| RNC Address in Use | The IP address of the RNC currently used. | | X |

13.3 GGSN

GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 7 shows the PDP context fields for one PDP Address.

Table 7: GGSN PDP Context

| Field | Description | GSM | UMTS |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------|
| IMSI | International Mobile Subscriber Identity. | X | X |
| NSAPI | Network layer Service Access Point Identifier. | X | X |
| MSISDN | The basic MSISDN of the MS. | X | X |
| PDP Type | PDP type, e.g., PPP or IP. | X | X |
| PDP Address | PDP address, e.g., an IP address. | X | X |
| Dynamic Address | Indicates whether PDP Address is static or dynamic. | X | X |
| APN in Use | The APN Network Identifier currently used. | X | X |
| TEID | Tunnel Endpoint Identifier. | X | X |
| TFT | Traffic flow template. | X | X |
| QoS Profile Negotiated | The quality of service profile negotiated. | X | X |
| SGSN Address | The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS. | X | X |
| MNRG | Indicates whether the MS is marked as not reachable for PS at the HLR. | X | X |
| Recovery | Indicates if the SGSN is performing database recovery. | X | X |
| GTP-SND | GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN. | X | X |
| GTP-SNU | GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN. | X | X |
| Charging Id | Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN. | X | X |
| Charging Characteristics | The charging characteristics for this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing. | X | X |
| Trace Reference | Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace. | X | X |
| Trace Type | Indicates the type of trace. | X | X |
| Trigger Id | Identifies the entity that initiated the trace. | X | X |
| OMC Identity | Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s). | X | X |

If a PDP context is enabled for network-requested PDP context activation, then IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, SGSN Address and MNRG contain valid information also when the PDP context is inactive and when the MS is GPRS-detached.

13.4 MS

Each packet domain MS maintains MM and PDP context information in IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. The information may be contained in the MS and the TE. Table 8 shows the MS context fields.

Table 8: MS MM and PDP Contexts

| Field | SIM | Description | GSM | UMTS |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------|
| IMSI | G, U | International Mobile Subscriber Identity. | X | X |
| MM State | | Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED. | X | X |
| P-TMSI | G, U | Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity. | X | X |
| P-TMSI Signature | G, U | A signature used for identification checking purposes. | X | X |
| Routeing Area | G, U | Current routeing area. | X | X |
| Cell Identity | | Current cell. | X | |
| Kc | G | Current GPRS ciphering key. | X | |
| CKSN / KSI | G, U | Key Set Identifier for IK Next, CK Next, and Kc. | X | X |
| Ciphering algorithm | | Selected ciphering algorithm. | X | X |
| CK | | Currently used ciphering key. | | X |
| CK Next | U | UMTS ciphering key to be used after the next security mode command. | | X |
| IK | | Currently used integrity key. | | X |
| IK Next | U | Integrity key to be used after the next security mode command. | | X |
| MS Radio Access Capability | | MS radio access capabilities. | X | X |
| UE Capability | | UE radio capabilities. | | X |
| MS Network Capability | | MS network capabilities. | X | X |
| DRX Parameters | | Discontinuous reception parameters. | X | X |
| Radio Priority SMS | | The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission. | X | |
| Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts: | | | | |
| PDP Type | | PDP type, e.g., PPP or IP. | X | X |
| PDP Address | | PDP address, e.g., an IP address. | X | X |
| PDP State | | Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE. | X | X |
| Dynamic Address Allowed | | Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use a dynamic address. | X | X |
| APN Requested | | The APN requested. | X | X |
| NSAPI | | Network layer Service Access Point Identifier. | X | X |
| TI | | Transaction Identifier. | X | X |
| QoS Profile Requested | | The quality of service profile requested. | X | X |
| QoS Profile Negotiated | | The quality of service profile negotiated. | X | X |
| TFT | | Traffic flow template. | X | X |
| Radio Priority | | The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission. | X | |
| Packet Flow Id | | Packet flow identifier. | X | |
| Send N-PDU Number | | SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN. | X | X |
| Receive N-PDU Number | | SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN. | X | X |
| PDCCP-SND | | Sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence PDCCP-PDU expected from the RNC. | | X |
| PDCCP-SNU | | Sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence PDCCP-PDU to be sent to the RNC. | | X |

The information marked with a "U" in Table 8 shall be stored in the USIM.

The information marked with a "G" in Table 8:

- shall be stored in the GSIM if the connected SIM is GPRS-aware; and
- may be stored in the ME after GPRS detach if the connected GSIM is not GPRS-aware.

If the GSIM is packet domain service-aware, then the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the GSIM shall be used for packet domain services.

If the GSIM is not packet domain service-aware, then the P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the ME shall be used if and only if the IMSI stored in the GSIM is identical to the IMSI image maintained in the ME. If the IMSI stored in the GSIM is different from the IMSI image in the ME, then the IMSI image in the ME shall not be used, and the MS shall identify itself with the IMSI stored in the SIM when performing a GPRS attach. IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN may be stored in the ME after the GPRS attach has been successfully performed.

When using a USIM, the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, CK Next, IK Next, and CKSN / KSI stored in the USIM, and the CK and IK stored in the ME, shall be used for packet domain services.

13.5 MSC/VLR

The MSC/VLR may store the SGSN number of GPRS-attached MSs that are also IMSI-attached. Table 9 shows the MSC/VLR association for one MS.

Table 9: MSC/VLR Association

| Field | Description | GSM | UMTS |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|------|
| IMSI | IMSI is the main reference key. | X | X |
| SGSN Number | The SGSN number of the SGSN currently serving this MS. | X | X |

13.6 BSS for GPRS

Table 10 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 10: BSS Context

| Field | Description |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IMSI | IMSI is the main reference key. |
| TLLI | Temporary Logical Link Identity. |
| Trace Reference | Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace. |
| Trace Type | Indicates the type of trace. |
| Trigger Id | Identifies the entity that initiated the trace. |
| OMC Identity | Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s). |
| Each BSS context contains one or more BSS Packet Flow contexts: | |
| Packet Flow Id | Packet flow identifier. |
| Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated | The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow. |
| BSS Packet Flow Timer | BSS packet flow context inactivity timer. |

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. Table 11 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 11: RNC Context

| Field | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IMSI | IMSI is the main reference key. |
| UE Capability | UE radio capabilities. |
| Trace Reference | Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace. |
| Trace Type | Indicates the type of trace. |
| Trigger Id | Identifies the entity that initiated the trace. |
| OMC Identity | Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s). |
| Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts: | |
| RAB ID | Radio Access Bearer Identifier. |
| PDP Type | PDP type, e.g., PPP or IP. |
| TEID | Tunnel Endpoint Identifier. |
| GGSN Address in Use | The IP address of the SGSN currently used. |
| QoS Profile Negotiated | The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB. |
| GTP-SND | GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. |
| GTP-SNU | GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN. |
| PDCCP-SND | Sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence PDCCP-PDU to be sent to the MS. |
| PDCCP-SNU | Sequence Number of the next uplink in-sequence PDCCP-PDU expected from the MS. |

13.8 Recovery and Restoration Procedures

The recovery and restoration procedures are intended to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information. "Invalid" in this context means that the database entry cannot be regarded as reliable.

13.8.1 HLR Failure

When an HLR restarts, it sends to each SGSN where one or more of its MSs are registered a Reset message. This causes the SGSN to mark the relevant MM contexts as invalid, and to set NGAF if an SGSN – MSC/VLR association exists. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GSM) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from a marked MS, the SGSN performs an update location to the HLR as in the attach or inter SGSN RA update procedures, and, if NGAF is set, the procedure in subclause "Non-GPRS Alert" is followed. The update location procedure and the procedure towards the MSC/VLR may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator configuration-depending time period to avoid high signalling load. The periodic backup of HLR data to non-volatile storage is mandatory as described in 3G TS 23.007 [5].

13.8.2 SGSN Failure

When an SGSN fails, it deletes all MM and PDP contexts affected by the failure. SGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile. Based on configuration data, the SGSN shall send a Reset message to each of its associated VLRs. The VLRs shall mark all associations containing the restarted SGSN as unreliable. See 3G TS 23.007. In the case of optional CAMEL interaction the failing SGSN shall invoke the CAMEL-GPRS-Exception procedure towards the GSM-SCFs.

If data or signalling, except GPRS attach and RA update, is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the SGSN, then the SGSN shall discard the data or signalling.

If an RA update request is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists neither in the SGSN, nor in the old SGSN for the inter-SGSN RA update case, then the SGSN shall reject the RA update with an appropriate cause. In order to remain GPRS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new GPRS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

If a service request is received in a 3G-SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the 3G-SGSN, then the 3G-SGSN shall reject the service request with an appropriate cause. In order to remain GPRS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new GPRS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

NOTE: In some cases, user interaction may be required, and then the MS cannot (re-)activate the PDP contexts automatically.

When the SGSN receives a PDU Notification Request message for which no MM context exists, the SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response message to the GGSN with an appropriate cause (see subclause "Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure"), and the SGSN may search the MS by paging with the IMSI in the SGSN area. An MS that is paged for PS services with IMSI as the identifier shall perform a new GPRS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

When the SGSN receives a GTP-U PDU for which no PDP context exists it discards the GTP-U PDU and sends an error indication to the originating GGSN. The GGSN marks the related PDP context as invalid.

When the SGSN receives a mobile-terminated SM from the SMS-GMSC for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN, it rejects the request.

When the SGSN receives a paging request over the Gs interface for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN and the SGSN has not completed recovery, then the SGSN may page the MS for packet services with IMSI as identifier in the area specified by the location information provided by the MSC/VLR. If no such location information is provided, then the SGSN may page the MS in the routing areas corresponding to that MSC/VLR. After the MS performs a combined GPRS attach, the SGSN may continue serving the Gs interface paging request.

13.8.3 GGSN Failure

When a GGSN fails, all its PDP contexts affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. GGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile.

When the GGSN receives a GTP-U PDU for which no PDP context exists, it shall discard the GTP-U PDU and return an error indication to the originating SGSN. The SGSN shall mark the related PDP context as invalid and send a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the MS. The MS may then reactivate the PDP context.

13.8.4 VLR Failure

When a VLR fails, all its associations with SGSNs affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. Based on configuration data, the MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Reset message to each of its associated SGSNs. The SGSNs mark all associations containing the restarted VLR as invalid. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GSM) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from an MS that is both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached, the SGSN shall return a Detach Request (Detach Type) message in order to request the MS to perform a combined RA / LA update. Detach Type shall be set to IMSI Detach. The detach procedure may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator-configuration depending time period to avoid high signalling load.

13.8.5 BSS Failure (GSM Only)

When a BSS fails, all its BSS contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. BSS storage of data is volatile.

13.8.6 RNC Failure (UMTS Only)

When an RNC fails, all its RNC contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. RNC storage of data is volatile.

14 Identities

14.1 IMSI

A unique International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) shall be allocated to each packet-domain subscriber. This is also the case for GPRS-only subscribers. IMSI is defined in 3G TS 23.003 [4].

14.2 Packet TMSI

A Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity shall be allocated to each GPRS-attached MS. P-TMSI is defined in 3G TS 23.003.

14.3 NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) and Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) are used for network layer routing. An NSAPI / TLLI pair is unambiguous within a routing area.

In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context associated with a PDP address. Between the MS and SGSN, TLLI unambiguously identifies the logical link.

When the MS requests the activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs.

For example (shown figuratively below), an IP packet is received by the MS from a connected TE at the IP address A SAP. The IP PDU is encapsulated and NSAPI is initialised to NSAPI-1. TLLI is set to the MS's TLLI before the encapsulated IP packet is passed to the SNDC function. After the IP PDU is received, the SGSN analyses TLLI and NSAPI-1 and determines that the IP PDU shall be sent to the GGSN associated with IP address A.

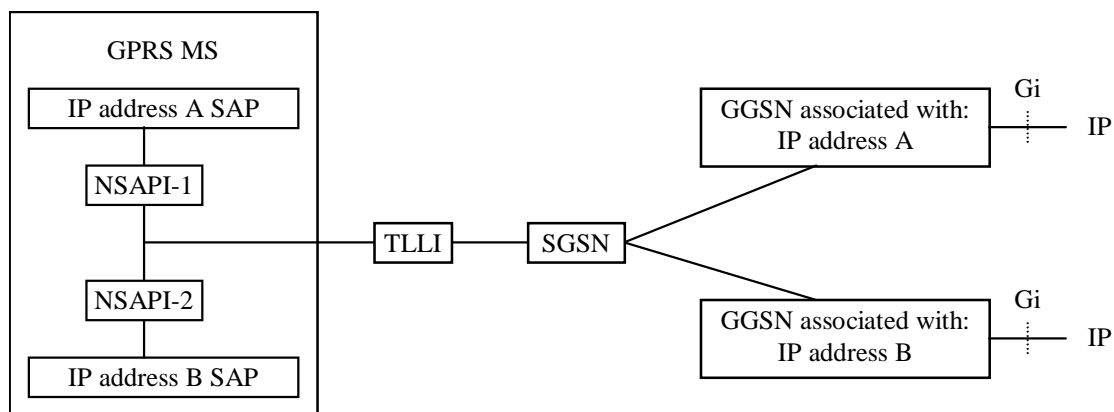


Figure 92: Use of NSAPI and TLLI

Within a routing area, there is a one-to-one correspondence between TLLI and IMSI that is only known in the MS and SGSN. If it is not clear from the context which routing area a TLLI belongs to, then TLLI is used together with RAI. TLLI is derived from a P-TMSI, and does then provide user identity confidentiality as described in subclause "User Identity Confidentiality (GSM Only)".

The TLLI address range is divided into four ranges: Local, Foreign, Random, and Auxiliary. The TLLI structure allows the MS and SGSN to deduce the range that a TLLI belongs to. A Local TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN, and is valid only in the RA associated with the P-TMSI. A Foreign TLLI is derived from a P-TMSI allocated in another RA. A Random TLLI is selected randomly by the MS, and is used when the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. An Auxiliary TLLI is selected by the SGSN, but is not used in this release of the specifications.

If the MS has a valid P-TMSI associated with the RA where the MS is currently located, then the MS shall use a Local TLLI derived from its P-TMSI, unless the MS performs a GPRS attach.

If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI associated with the current RA, or if the MS performs a GPRS attach, then it shall derive a Foreign TLLI from its P-TMSI, or allocate a Random TLLI if no valid P-TMSI is available.

When a TLLI is exchanged between the MS and an SGSN, then the TLLI is transmitted at the RLC/MAC layer within the Um protocol stack, and at the BSSGP layer within the Gb protocol stack. NSAPI is transmitted within the SNDCP layer in the user plane, and within the GMM/SM layer in the control plane. NSAPI is represented by a transaction identifier (TI) in some SM signalling messages. The TI is dynamically allocated by the MS for MS-requested PDP context activation, and by the network for network-requested PDP context activation. The TI is deallocated when a PDP context has been deactivated. TI usage is defined in 3G TS 24.007 and 3G TS 24.008.

By default, unless explicitly specified in the procedures, the TLLI transmitted at the RLC/MAC and BSSGP layers shall be used to identify the MS.

14.4 NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID for UMTS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) and IMSI are used for network layer routing. An NSAPI / IMSI pair is used to assign a Tunnel Endpoint Identifier (TEID).

In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context associated with an MM context.

In communication with RNC across the Iu-PS and Uu interfaces, the RAB ID is used to identify the radio access bearer and that information element shall be set identical to the NSAPI value. In the RNC, RAB ID identifies the RNC RAB context. Radio Bearer Identity (RB Identity) is used to identify the Uu interface radio bearer(s) associated with the radio access bearer. The RAB ID shall uniquely identify the RAB for a specific CN domain and a particular MS.

There is a one-to-one relationship between NSAPI, Radio Access Bearer, and PDP context. In the packet domain, there is also a one-to-one relationship with Radio Bearer Identity.

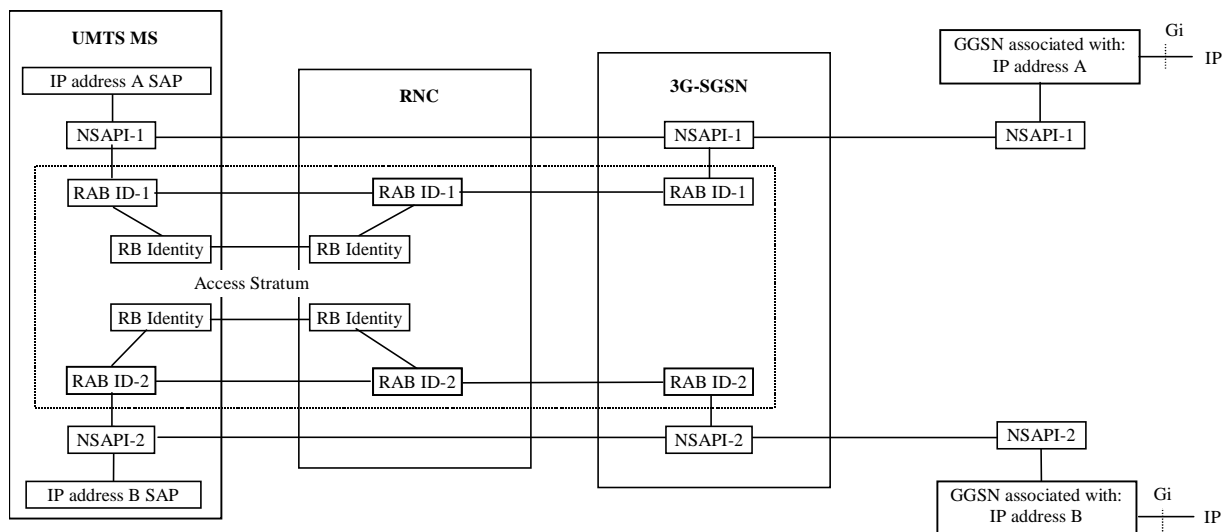


Figure 93: Use of NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID

When the MS initiates activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs. When the SGSN initiates a RAB assignment procedure, the SGSN shall include the NSAPI(s) in the RAB ID information element(s).

14.5 PDP Address

A packet-domain subscriber identified by an IMSI, shall have one or more network layer addresses, i.e., PDP addresses, temporarily and/or permanently associated with it that conforms to the standard addressing scheme of the respective network layer service used, e.g.:

- an IP version 4 address; or
- an IP version 6 address.

PDP addresses are activated and deactivated through MM procedures described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, Deactivation, and Preservation Functions".

14.6 TEID

A Tunnel Endpoint Identifier (TEID) is used by the GPRS tunnelling protocol between GSNs, and between RNCs and SGSNs, to identify a tunnel endpoint in the receiving GTP-C or GTP-U protocol entity and to identify a PDP context (or in the Iu case a Radio Access Bearer). The receiving end side of a GTP tunnel locally assigns the TEID value that the transmitting side has to use. The TEID values are exchanged between tunnel endpoints using GTP-C (or RANAP in the Iu case) messages.

The TEID is assigned based on the NSAPI and the IMSI (or in the Iu case the RAB ID and the IMSI). It is a unique identifier within one IP address of a logical node, i.e., RNC, SGSN, or GGSN.

The TEID is forwarded to the GGSN upon PDP Context Activation and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the GGSN and the SGSN to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and GGSN. The TEID is also used to forward N-PDUs from the old SGSN to the new SGSN at and after an inter SGSN routing area update. In UMTS, the TEID is also forwarded to the RNC upon RAB assignment and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the 3G-SGSN and the RNC in order to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and the MS's RNC RAB contexts in the RNC. It is also used to forward N-PDUs from the SRNC to the target RNC at SRNS relocation.

14.7 Routing Area Identity

Routing Area Identity (RAI), defined by an operator, identifies one or several cells.

In GSM, RAI is broadcast as system information.

In UMTS, RAI is broadcast to MSs in RRC Idle mode, and is notified to MSs in RRC Connected mode on established RRC connections as MM system information.

The location of an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state is known in the SGSN on an RA level. Cells that do not support packet-domain services within an LA are grouped into a null RA. The MS is paged for packet services in the RA where the MS is located when mobile-terminated traffic arrives in the SGSN. The MS is paged for circuit-switched services by the SGSN in the last known RA plus in the null RA.

NOTE: Cells not supporting GPRS and served by a BSC without a Gb interface should not be included in the same location area as cells not supporting GPRS and served by a BSC with a Gb interface.

A Routing Area is a subset of one, and only one, Location Area (LA), meaning that an RA cannot span more than one LA. An RA is served by only one SGSN.

The following rules apply for the Routing Area Identity:

- RAC is only unique when presented together with LAI.
- CI is only unique when presented together with LAI or RAI (GSM only).
- LAI = MCC + MNC + LAC.
- RAI = MCC + MNC + LAC + RAC.
- CGI = LAI + CI (GSM only).

14.8 UTRAN Registration Area Identity (UMTS Only)

The UTRAN Registration Area Identity (URA Id) identifies a UTRAN Registration Area (URA) and is defined in 3G TS 25.331. URA Id can be used to indicate to the MS which URA it shall use in case of overlapping URAs.

14.9 Cell Identity

In GSM, Cell Identity (CI) identifies one cell. In UMTS, Cell Identifier (C-Id) uniquely identifies a cell within an RNS. CI and C-Id are defined in 3G TS 23.003.

14.10 Service Area Identity (UMTS Only)

The Service Area Identity (SAI) is used to uniquely identify an area consisting of one or more cells belonging to the same location area. Such an area is called a Service Area and can be used for indicating the location of an MS to the CN.

The Service Area Code (SAC) together with the PLMN identity and the LAC constitutes the Service Area Identity:

- $SAI = MCC + MNC + LAC + SAC$.

14.11 GSN Addresses

14.11.1 GSN Address

Each SGSN and GGSN shall have an IP address of type IPv4, and optionally of type IPv6, for inter-communication over the backbone network. The IP addresses of GSNs and other backbone nodes of all PLMNs build a private address space that is not accessible from the public Internet. For the GGSN and the SGSN, this IP address may also correspond to one or more DNS-type logical GSN names.

14.11.2 GSN Number

Each SGSN shall have an SGSN number for communication with e.g., HLR and EIR.

Each GGSN that supports the optional SS7-based Gc interface shall have a GGSN number for communication with HLRs.

14.12 RNC Addresses (UMTS Only)

14.12.1 RNC Address

Each RNC shall have one or more IP addresses of type IPv4, and optionally of type IPv6, for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

14.12.2 RNC Number

Each RNC shall have an RNC number for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

14.13 Access Point Name

In the backbone, Access Point Name is a reference to the GGSN to be used. In addition, Access Point Name may, in the GGSN, identify the external network and optionally a service to be offered. Access Point Name is composed of two parts as defined in 3G TS 23.003:

- The APN Network Identifier is mandatory and is a label (for example "corporation" or "service") or a set of labels separated by dots which is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions (for example "company.com" or "service.company.com"). In order to guarantee the uniqueness of the APN, the packet-domain PLMN should allocate, to an ISP or corporation, an APN Network Identifier identical to their domain name in the public Internet. The APN Network Identifier shall not end with ".gprs". An APN Network Identifier that consists of 3 or more labels and that starts with a Reserved Service Label, or an APN Network Identifier that consists of a Reserved Service Label alone, shall indicate that for this APN the GGSN supports additional services such as external PDN address allocation or Mobile IP support. Reserved Service Labels, e.g., "dhcp" or "MIPv4FA", and the corresponding services that they stand for, e.g., external PDN address allocation via DHCP, or Mobile IP Foreign Agent support, are to be agreed among operators.
- The APN Operator Identifier is optional. It is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions, and consists of three labels. The APN Operator Identifier shall end in ".gprs". For example, it may be "MNCyyyy.MCCzzzz.gprs". The exact format is defined in 3G TS 29.060.

The APN stored in the HLR shall not contain the APN Operator Identifier. A wild card may be stored in the HLR instead of the APN. This wild card indicates that the user may select an APN that is not stored in the HLR. The use of the wild card is described in annex A.

15 Operational Aspects

15.1 Charging

Charging information for the packet domain is collected for each MS by SGSNs and GGSNs that are serving the MS. The operator can control whether charging shall be collected in the SGSN and the GGSN on an individual MS and/or PDP context basis by appropriately setting the Subscribed Charging Characteristics and/or PDP context Charging Characteristics in the HLR. Charging characteristic shall be ignored for roaming subscribers.

The information that the operator uses to generate a bill to a subscriber is operator-specific. Billing aspects, e.g., a regular fee for a fixed period, are outside the scope of the present document.

Every packet domain operator collects and processes his own charging information.

The SGSN collects charging information for each MS related with the radio network usage while the GGSN collects charging information for each MS related with the external data network usage. Both GSNs also collect charging information on usage of the network resources.

15.1.1 Charging Information

Charging information is collected for the GPRS subscriber.

As a minimum, the SGSN shall collect the following charging information for MSs and/or individual PDP contexts that are subject to charging:

- usage of the radio interface: the charging information shall describe the amount of data transmitted in MO and MT directions categorised with QoS and user protocols;
- usage of the packet data protocol addresses: the charging information shall describe how long the MS has used the packet data protocol addresses;
- usage of the general packet domain resources: the charging information shall describe the usage of other packet domain-related resources and the MS's network activity (e.g., mobility management); and
- location of MS: HPLMN, VPLMN, plus optional higher-accuracy location information.

As a minimum, the GGSN shall collect the following charging information for MSs and/or individual PDP contexts that are subject to charging:

- destination and source: the charging information shall describe the destination and source addresses with a level of accuracy as defined by the packet domain operator;
- usage of the external data networks: the charging information shall describe the amount of data sent and received to and from the external data network; and
- usage of the packet data protocol addresses: the charging information shall describe how long the MS has used the PDP addresses.

The RNC shall collect the following charging information for an MS's RABs when instructed by the 3G-SGSN:

- the amount of not transferred downlink data, i.e., data that the RNC has either discarded or forwarded to a 2G-SGSN. Partially transferred packets shall be handled as not transferred. The collected charging information shall be sent by the RNC to the 3G-SGSN when a RAB is released, or when explicitly requested by the 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN shall indicate at RAB setup whether data volume collection and reporting for the particular RAB is required or not.

15.1.2 Reverse Charging

It shall be possible to provide reverse charging as a subscription option. However, reverse charging may not be applicable to certain external data network protocols.

15.2 Quality of Service Profile

A QoS profile is associated with each PDP context. The QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes. The definition of the QoS attributes for the packet domain can be found in 3G TS 23.107, which also defines the mapping between the packet-domain QoS attributes and the QoS attributes for GPRS releases 97 and 98.

There are many possible QoS profiles defined by the combinations of the attributes. A PLMN may support only a limited subset of the possible QoS profiles.

During the QoS profile negotiation defined in subclause "Activation Procedures", it shall be possible for the MS to request a value for each of the QoS attributes, including the HLR-stored subscribed default values. The network shall negotiate each attribute to a level that is in accordance with the available GPRS resources. The network shall always attempt to provide adequate resources to support the negotiated QoS profiles.

15.2.1 Radio Priority Levels (GSM Only)

The RLC/MAC layer supports four radio priority levels and an additional level for signalling messages as defined in GSM 03.64 and GSM 04.60. Upon uplink access the MS can indicate one of the four priority levels, and whether the cause for the uplink access is user data or signalling message transmission. This information is used by the BSS to determine the radio access precedence (i.e., access priority) and the service precedence (i.e., transfer priority under congested situation), see GSM 04.60. The radio priority levels to be used for transmission of MO SMS shall be determined by the SGSN and delivered to the MS in the Attach Accept message. The radio priority level to be used for user data transmission shall be determined by the SGSN based on the negotiated QoS profile and shall be delivered to the MS during the PDP Context Activation and PDP Context Modification procedures.

15.3 Traffic Flow Template

A TFT consists of from one and up to eight packet filters, each identified by a unique packet filter identifier. A packet filter also has an evaluation precedence index that is unique within all TFTs associated with the PDP contexts that share the same PDP address. This evaluation precedence index is in the range of 255 (lowest evaluation precedence) down to 0 (highest evaluation precedence). The MS manages packet filter identifiers and their evaluation precedence indexes, and creates the packet filter contents.

A TFT is always associated with a PDP context during the Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure. A TFT may be added to a PDP context that was created with the PDP Context Activation Procedure by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure. By means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure any TFT can be modified. A PDP context can never have more than one TFT associated with it.

15.3.1 Rules for Operations on TFTs

The MS shall use the TFT and packet filter identifiers in each operation for handling of the TFTs and packet filters.

When the MS creates a new TFT, or modifies an existing TFT, it has to include at least one valid packet filter. If no valid packet filter is included in the newly created or modified TFT, then the procedure used for the creation or modification of the TFT shall fail, and an error code shall be returned to the MS.

During the modification of a TFT, one or more existing packet filters can be modified or deleted, or a new packet filter can be created. In order to modify an existing packet filter, the new values for the packet filter attributes along with the packet filter identifier is sent from the MS to the GGSN. The MS may also modify the evaluation precedence index only of one or several packet filters by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure.

A TFT is deleted when the associated PDP context is deactivated. A TFT can also be deleted by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure. At any time there may exist only one PDP context with no associated TFT amongst all the PDP contexts associated with one PDP address. An attempt by the MS to delete a TFT, which would violate this rule, shall be rejected by the GGSN.

15.3.2 Packet Filter Attributes

Each valid packet filter contains a unique identifier within a given TFT, an evaluation precedence index that is unique within all TFTs for one PDP address, and at least one of the following attributes:

- Source Address and Subnet Mask.
- Protocol Number (IPv4) / Next Header (IPv6).
- Destination Port Range.
- Source Port Range.
- IPSec Security Parameter Index (SPI).
- Type of Service (TOS) (IPv4) / Traffic class (IPv6) and Mask.
- Flow Label (IPv6).

Some of the above-listed attributes may coexist in a packet filter while others mutually exclude each other. In Table 12 below, the possible combinations are shown. Only those attributes marked with an "X" may be specified for a single packet filter. All marked attributes may be specified, but at least one shall be specified.

If the parameters of the header of a received PDP PDU match all specified attribute values in a packet filter, then a match is considered to be found for this packet filter. In this case the evaluation procedure is aborted. Other packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index are evaluated until such a match is found.

There may be potential conflicts if attribute values are combined in such a way that the defined filter can never achieve a match to a valid IP packet header. However, the determination of such conflicts are outside the scope of GPRS standardisation.

Table 12: Valid Packet Filter Attribute Combinations

| Packet filter attribute | Valid combination types | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----|-----|
| | I | II | III |
| Source Address and Subnet Mask | X | X | X |
| Protocol Number (IPv4) / Next Header (IPv6) | X | X | |
| Destination Port Range | X | | |
| Source Port Range | X | | |
| IPSec SPI | | X | |
| TOS (IPv4) / Traffic Class (IPv6) and Mask | X | X | X |
| Flow Label (IPv6) | | | X |

15.3.2.1 Source Address and Subnet Mask

The Source Address and Subnet Mask attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain an IPv4 or IPv6 address along with a subnet mask.

As an example, the source address and subnet mask attribute to classify packets coming from all hosts within the IPv4 domain A.B.C.0/24 is {A.B.C.0 [255.255.255.0]}.

15.3.2.2 Protocol Number / Next Header

The Protocol Number / Next Header attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain either an IPv4 Protocol Number or an IPv6 Next Header value. The value range is from 0 to 255.

15.3.2.3 Port Numbers

The Destination Port Range and Source Port Range attributes of a valid packet filter shall each contain one port number, or a range of port numbers. Port numbers range between 0 and 65 535.

15.3.2.4 IPSec Security Parameter Index

The IPSec SPI attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain one SPI which is a 32-bit field.

15.3.2.5 Type of Service / Traffic Class and Mask

The Type of Service / Traffic Class and Mask attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain either an IPv4 TOS octet or an IPv6 Traffic Class octet along with a mask defining which of the 8 bits should be used for matching.

15.3.2.6 Flow Label

The Flow Label attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain an IPv6 flow label which is a 20-bit field.

15.3.3 Example Usage of Packet Filters

Based on the type of traffic or the external-network QoS capabilities, different types of packet filters can be used to classify a given PDP PDU in order to determine the right PDP context. Some examples are given below.

15.3.3.1 IPv4 Multi-field Classification

In the case of multi-field classification, the packet filter consists of a number of packet header fields. For example, to classify TCP/IPv4 packets originating from 172.168.8.0/24 destined to port 5 003 at the TE, the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 1;
- IPv4 Source Address = {172.168.8.0 [255.255.255.0]};
- Protocol Number for TCP = 6; and
- Destination Port = 5 003.

15.3.3.2 IPv4 TOS-based Classification

In the case of TOS-based classification, the packet filter consists of only the TOS octet coding. For example to classify IPv4 packets marked with TOS coding 001010xx, the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 3;
- Type of Service / Traffic Class = 00101000 and Mask = 11111100.

NOTE: The TOS-based classification can always be augmented with the source address attribute if it is known that different source domains use different TOS octet codings for the same traffic class.

15.3.3.3 IPv4 Multi-field Classification for IPSec Traffic

In the case of multi-field classification of IPSec traffic, the packet filter contains the SPI instead of the port numbers that are not available due to encryption. If IPSec (ESP) was used with an SPI of 0x0F80F000, then the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 4;

- Protocol Number for ESP = 50; and
- SPI = 0x0F80F000.

16 Interactions with Other Services

This clause describes the interaction between packet-domain services and the following other services:

- point-to-point Short Message Service (SMS);
- circuit-switched services;
- supplementary services; and
- CAMEL services.

16.1 Point-to-point Short Message Service

16.1.1 Point-to-point Short Message Service (GSM Only)

It shall be possible for a GPRS-attached MS to send and receive short messages over GPRS radio channels. An MS that is GPRS-attached and not IMSI-attached shall transfer SMs over GPRS channels. MSs that are both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall transfer SMs over GPRS channels or over non-GPRS control channels (if non-GPRS control channels are used, then paging for MT SMS may go through the SGSN).

The following two subclauses define the operation of mobile-terminated and mobile-originated SMS routing and transfer over GPRS radio channels. More detailed definitions are contained in GSM 03.40 [8].

16.1.1.1 Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer

Figure 94 and the description below show an example of a successful delivery of a SM to an MS over a GPRS radio channel.

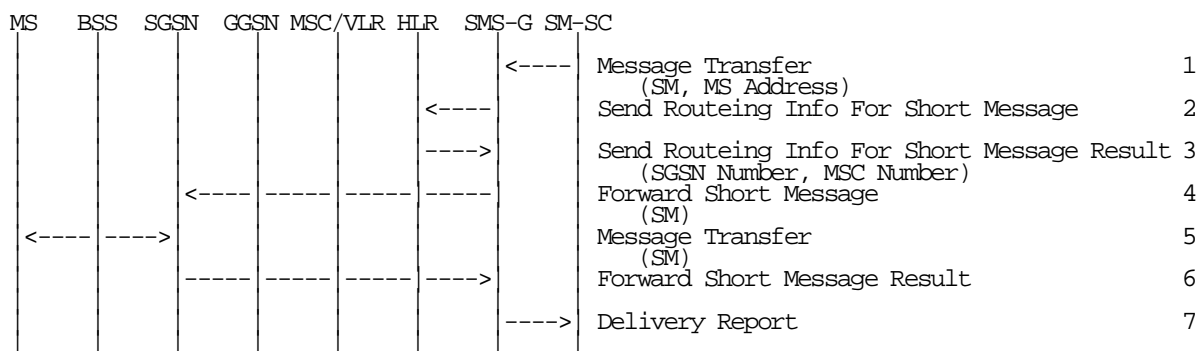


Figure 94: MT SMS Transfer, Successful

- 1) The short message service centre determines it shall send a SM to an MS. SM-SC forwards the SM to a SMS gateway MSC (SMS-GMSC).
- 2) SMS-GMSC examines the destination MS Address, and sends a Send Routeing Info For Short Message message to the relevant HLR.
- 3) HLR returns a Send Routeing Info For Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC. The result may contain the MS's current SGSN Number, the MSC Number, or both. If the result does not contain an SGSN Number (i.e., the HLR knows that the MS is not reachable via an SGSN), and if the result does contain an MSC Number, then non-GPRS SMS delivery procedures are followed. If the result contains an SGSN Number, the SMS transfer proceeds according to the following events.

NOTE: SMS delivery via the SGSN is normally more radio resource efficient than SMS delivery via the MSC/VLR. The preferred delivery path is selected by SMS-GMSC operator-specific action.

- 4) SMS-GMSC forwards the SM to the SGSN.
- 5) SGSN transfers the SM to the MS on the RP, CP, LLC layers, as defined in GSM 04.11 and GSM 04.64.
- 6) SGSN returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC indicating successful delivery of the SM.
- 7) SMS-GMSC returns a Delivery Report to the SM-SC indicating successful delivery of the SM.

16.1.1.1.1 Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer

The SGSN may not be able to deliver the SM to the MS. This may for example happen when the MS is not attached to GPRS, or when the radio channel conditions are bad.

When the SGSN cannot deliver the SM to the MS, the SGSN sets the Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag (MNRG), and returns a failure report to the SMS-GMSC. Based on the routing information received from the HLR, the SMS-GMSC shall do one of the following:

- If an MSC/VLR is available for the MS, the SM is forwarded to the MS via the MSC/VLR. A successful delivery report shall be returned to the SM-SC.
- If an MSC/VLR is not available for the MS, the Message Waiting Indication information in the HLR shall be updated and an unsuccessful delivery report shall be returned to the SM-SC.

Figure 95 illustrates one possible traffic scenario when neither the SGSN nor the MSC is able to deliver the SM.

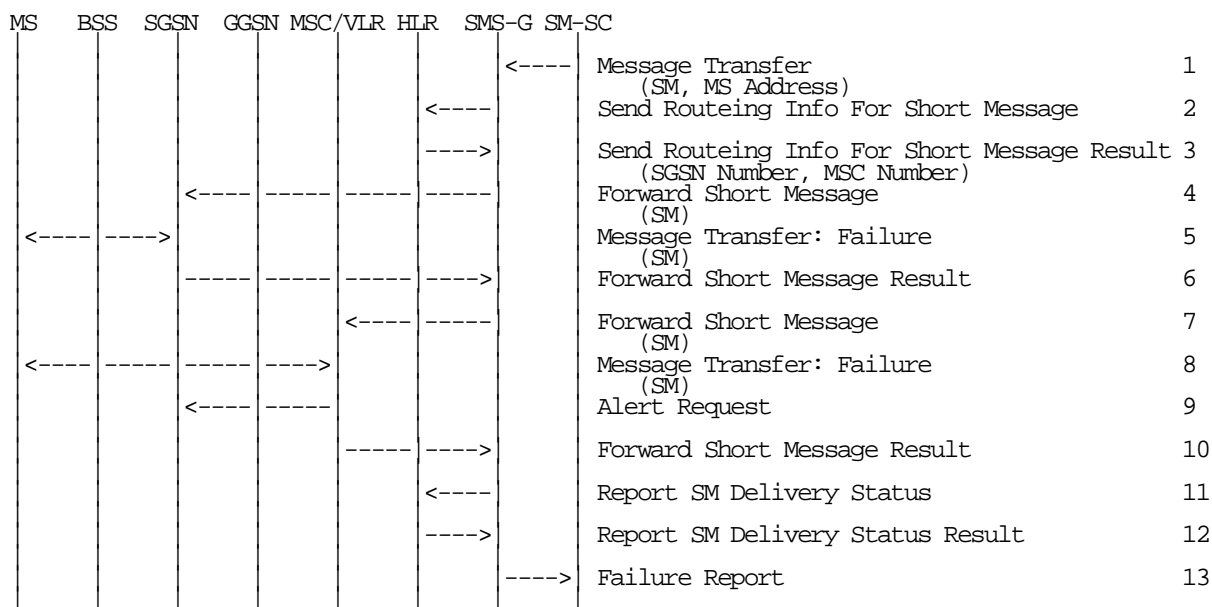


Figure 95: MT SMS Transfer, Unsuccessful

- 1) The short message service centre determines it shall send a SM to an MS. SM-SC forwards the SM to a SMS-GMSC.
- 2) SMS-GMSC examines the destination MS Address, and sends a Send Routeing Info For Short Message message to the relevant HLR.
- 3) HLR returns a Send Routeing Info For Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC. The Result contains an SGSN Number and an MSC Number.
- 4) SMS-GMSC forwards the SM to the SGSN.
- 5) SGSN attempts to transfer the SM to the MS, but fails.

- 6) SGSN sets MNRG and returns a Forward Short Message Result message to SMS-GMSC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.
- 7) SMS-GMSC selects an alternative route for the SMS, and forwards the SM to the MSC/VLR.
- 8) MSC/VLR attempts to transfer the SM to the MS, but fails.
- 9) The MSC/VLR requests the setting of the NGAF at the SGSN.
- 10) VLR sets MNRF and returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.
- 11) SMS-GMSC sends a Report SM Delivery message to the HLR.
- 12) HLR updates its Message Waiting Indication fields and returns a Report SM Delivery Result message to the SMS-GMSC.
- 13) SMS-GMSC returns a Failure Report to the SM-SC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.

Figure 66 shows that the SGSN sends a Ready for SM (MS Reachable) message to the HLR when the MS becomes reachable and MNRG is set in the SGSN. The SGSN indicates also to the MSC/VLR when the MS becomes reachable and NGAF is set in the SGSN. If the MNRF is set at the MSC/VLR, the MSC/VLR sends a Ready for SM (MS Reachable) message to the HLR. Reception of a Ready for SM message or Update Location message when MNRG is set in the HLR shall trigger the SMS alert procedure as defined in GSM 03.40.

MNRG remains set in the SGSN independently of whether the MSC/VLR was successful in delivering the SM or not. This means that the SGSN in certain cases sends a Ready for SM message to the HLR when an MS becomes reachable via the SGSN, even if no SM is waiting. This causes a small amount of duplicate signalling between SGSN and HLR only.

16.1.1.2 Mobile-originated SMS Transfer

Figure 96 and the description below explain the steps involved in sending a SM from an MS over a GPRS radio channel.

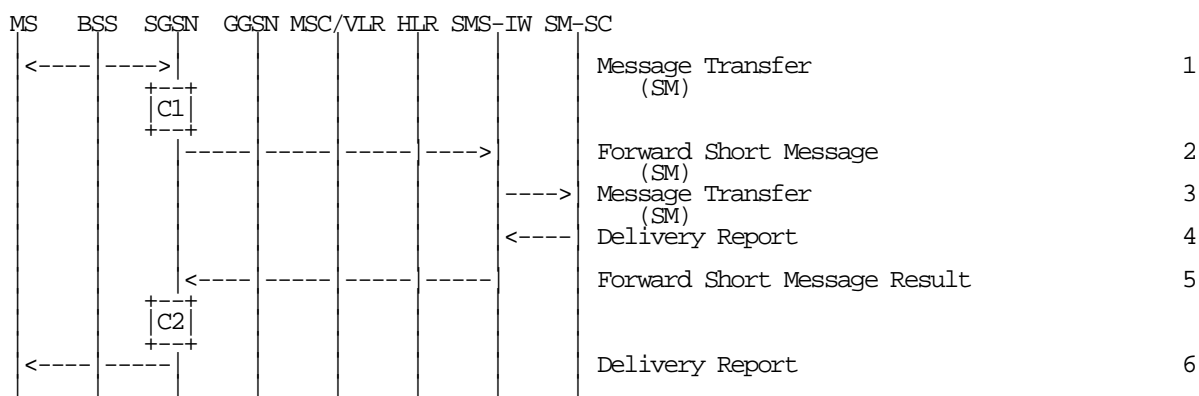


Figure 96: MO SMS Transfer, Successful

- 1) The MS has a SM to send, and transfers the SM to the SGSN via RP, CP, and LLC.
- 2) SGSN checks the MS subscription data, and determines that the MS is allowed to originate the SMS. SGSN forwards the SM to a SMS interworking MSC (SMS-IW MSC).
- 3) SMS-IW MSC passes the SM to the addressed SM-SC.
- 4) SM-SC returns a Delivery Report to the SMS-IW MSC indicating successful delivery of the SM.
- 5) SMS-IW MSC returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SGSN indicating successful delivery of the SM.
- 6) SGSN returns a Delivery Report to the MS indicating successful delivery of the SM.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

- C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SMS-MO-Request.
- C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SMS-MO-Result.

16.1.2 Point-to-point Short Message Service (UMTS Only)

SMS shall be supported via the control plane in the UMTS packet domain. The UMTS SMS service is described in 3G TS 23.040.

16.2 Circuit-switched Services (GSM Only)

The ability for a GPRS user to access circuit-switched services depends on the subscription held, the network capabilities, and the MS capabilities. Interaction between GPRS and circuit-switched services is described in subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR".

16.2.1 Suspension of GPRS Services

When a GPRS-attached MS enters dedicated mode or when an MS in CS/PS mode of operation in UMTS during a CS connection reverts to class-B mode of operation in GSM and when the MS limitations make it unable to communicate on GPRS channels, the MS shall request the network for suspension of GPRS services. The Suspend and Resume procedure is illustrated in Figure 97.

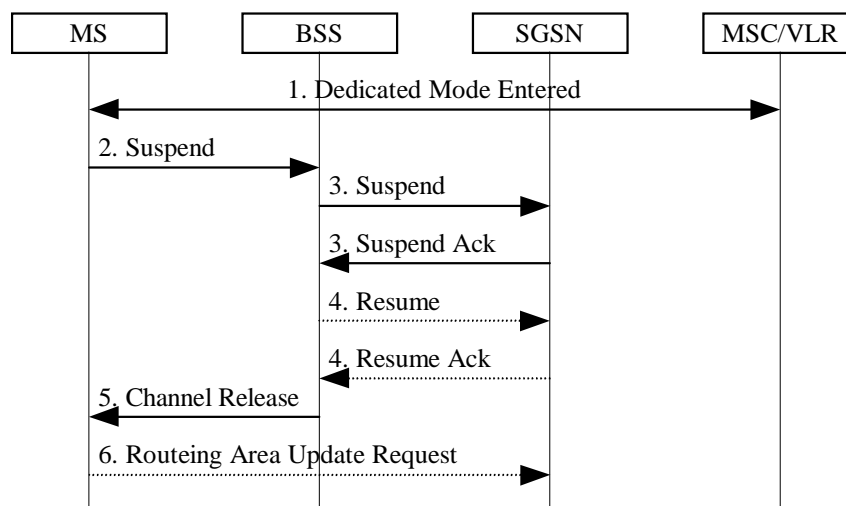


Figure 97: Suspend and Resume Procedure

- 1) The MS enters dedicated mode, or performs handover from UMTS to GSM (where the MS reverts to GSM class-B mode of operation) during CS connection.
- 2) The MS sends an RR Suspend (TLLI, RAI) message to the BSS. The BSS may terminate any ongoing GPRS traffic for this TLLI.
- 3) The BSS sends a Suspend (TLLI, RAI) message to the SGSN, and the SGSN acknowledges by returning Suspend Ack. The BSS shall store TLLI and RAI in order to be able to request the SGSN to resume GPRS services when the MS leaves dedicated mode.
- 4) Eventually, the BSS determines that the circuit-switched radio channel shall be released. If the BSS is able to request the SGSN to resume GPRS services, the BSS shall send a Resume (TLLI, RAI) message to the SGSN. The SGSN acknowledges the successful outcome of the resume by returning Resume Ack.
- 5) The BSS sends an RR Channel Release (Resume) message to the MS. Resume indicates whether the BSS has successfully requested the SGSN to resume GPRS services for the MS, i.e., whether Resume Ack was received in the BSS before the RR Channel Release message was transmitted. The MS leaves dedicated mode.

- 6) If the BSS did not successfully request the SGSN to resume GPRS services, or if the RR Channel Release message was not received before the MS left dedicated mode, or an MS in GSM class-B mode of operation during CS connection performs handover to CS/PS mode of operation in UMTS, then the MS shall resume GPRS services by sending a Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN, as described in subclause "Routeing Area Update Procedure".

The full handling of suspended MSs in the BSS and the SGSN is implementation dependent. Typically, the SGSN should not page suspended MSs.

If the MS performs an inter-BSC handover while suspended, then TLLI and RAI should be transferred as BSC-to-BSC information in the Handover Required and Handover Request messages, see GSM 08.08. This allows the new BSC to initiate the Resume request procedure to the SGSN. In the case where the BSC-to-BSC information was not transferred or not understood, then the MS doesn't receive an indication that resumption has been successful, and the MS shall resume GPRS services by initiating a Routeing Area Update Request procedure as described in step 6.

16.2.2 GPRS and Dedicated Mode Priority Handling

An MS in class-B mode of operation that communicates on GPRS radio channels when a dedicated channel is needed, shall immediately abort the GPRS communication and trigger the Suspend and Resume procedure.

Response to circuit-switched paging, non-emergency MO circuit-switched calls, MO SMS, and MO supplementary services are exceptions to the above rule. In these cases, it is an implementation choice whether to immediately abort GPRS communication or to delay the dedicated mode establishment.

16.3 Supplementary Services

No supplementary services are defined for the packet domain. Supplementary services may be available when interworked-with networks, but this is outside the scope of this specification.

16.4 CAMEL Services

CAMEL may be used for session and cost control. It may also be used for other operator-specific services.

Annex A (normative): APN and GGSN Selection

This annex contains the rules applied upon PDP context activation to determine the APN and the corresponding GGSN.

A.1 Definitions

The SGSN knows from the subscription data the parameters (S for Subscribed): PDP type (S), PDP address (S), APN (S), and VPLMN address allowed.

The SGSN may know from configuration the default APN supporting a given PDP type. This APN is called APN (SGSN) and does not include an APN Operator Identifier.

The SGSN knows the parameters requested by the MS (R for Requested): PDP type (R), PDP address (R), and APN (R). APN (R) is the APN Network Identifier requested by the MS.

In case of "an APN chosen by the SGSN" the activated PDP context is always linked with a dynamic PDP address.

An MS may have multiple subscription records for the same PDP type and the same PDP address, but with different APNs.

An MS may have one or two subscription records with the same PDP type and the same APN: one with a static PDP address, one with a dynamic PDP address.

When the MS is in its HPLMN, if the MS requests an APN that does not correspond to any GGSN of its HPLMN, the request shall be rejected by SGSN. When the MS is in a VPLMN, if the MS requests an APN that does not correspond to any GGSN of its HPLMN nor of this VPLMN, the request shall be rejected by SGSN.

If APN (S) = wild card (see GSM 03.03), it means either:

- that a default APN (a default PDN) has to be chosen by the SGSN (APN (SGSN)) if no APN (R) has been provided; or
- that a PDP context with dynamic PDP address may be activated towards any APN requested by the MS.

In order to derive APN (R) from the APN sent by the MS, the SGSN shall check if the APN sent by the user ends with ".gprs". If not, then APN (R) is equal to APN sent by the MS. If yes, then APN (R) is the APN sent by the MS without the three last labels.

A.2 Selection Rules

The SGSN shall select the APN to be used to derive the GGSN address, and set the selection mode parameter according to the rules in the SDL diagrams in this subclause. The following definitions apply to the SDL diagrams:

AddrMode: Addressing Mode.

APN-OI: APN Operator Identifier.

HPLMN-OI: HPLMN APN Operator Identifier.

Number <condition>: determines the PDP context subscription records that satisfy the given condition.

PDPaddr: PDP address.

SelMode := ChosenBySGSN: Network-provided APN, subscription not verified.

SelMode := SentByMS: MS-provided APN, subscription not verified.

SelMode := Subscribed: MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified.

SelMode: Selection Mode.

VPLMN-OI: VPLMN APN Operator Identifier.

+: concatenation operation.

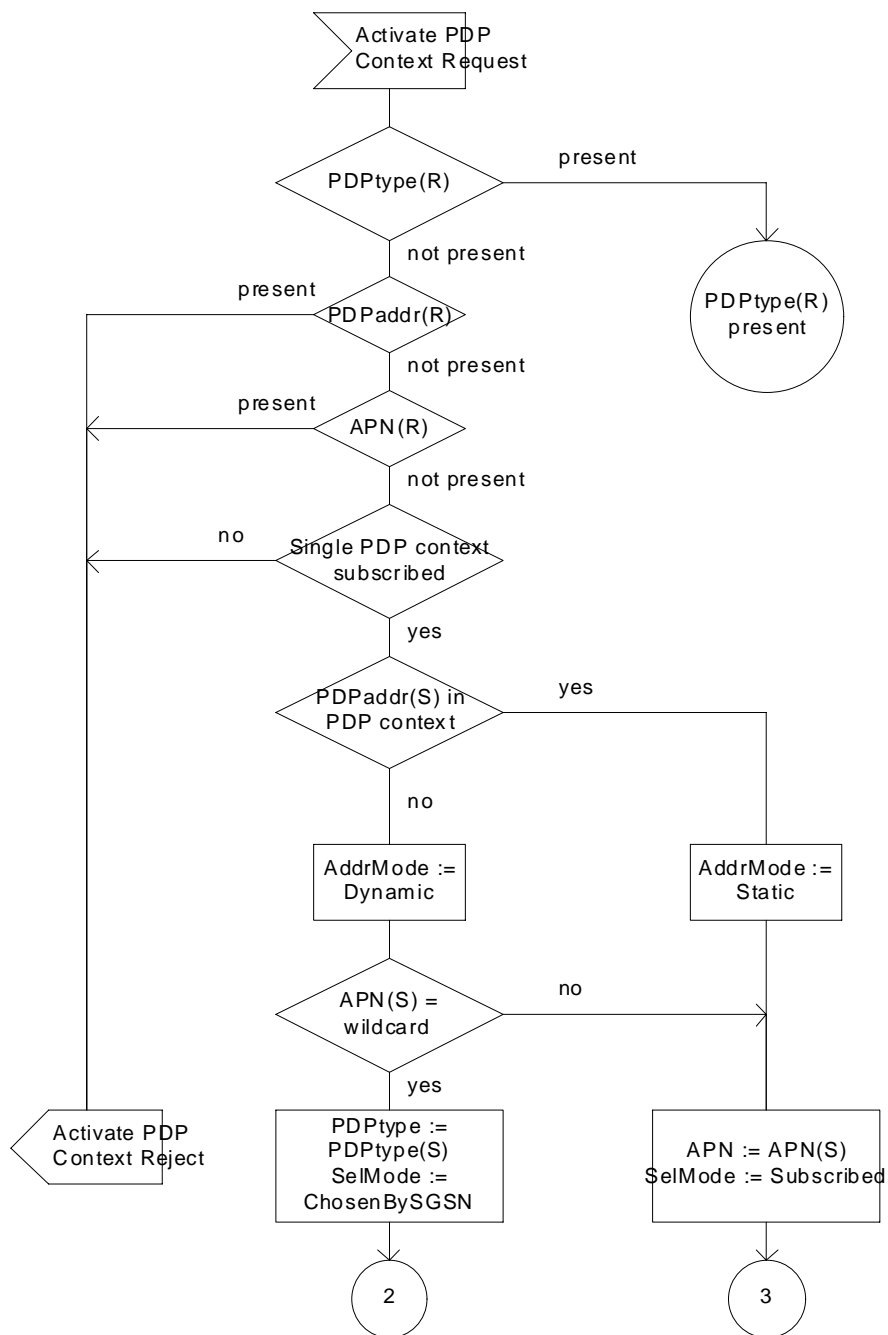


Figure A.1: SDL Diagram 1

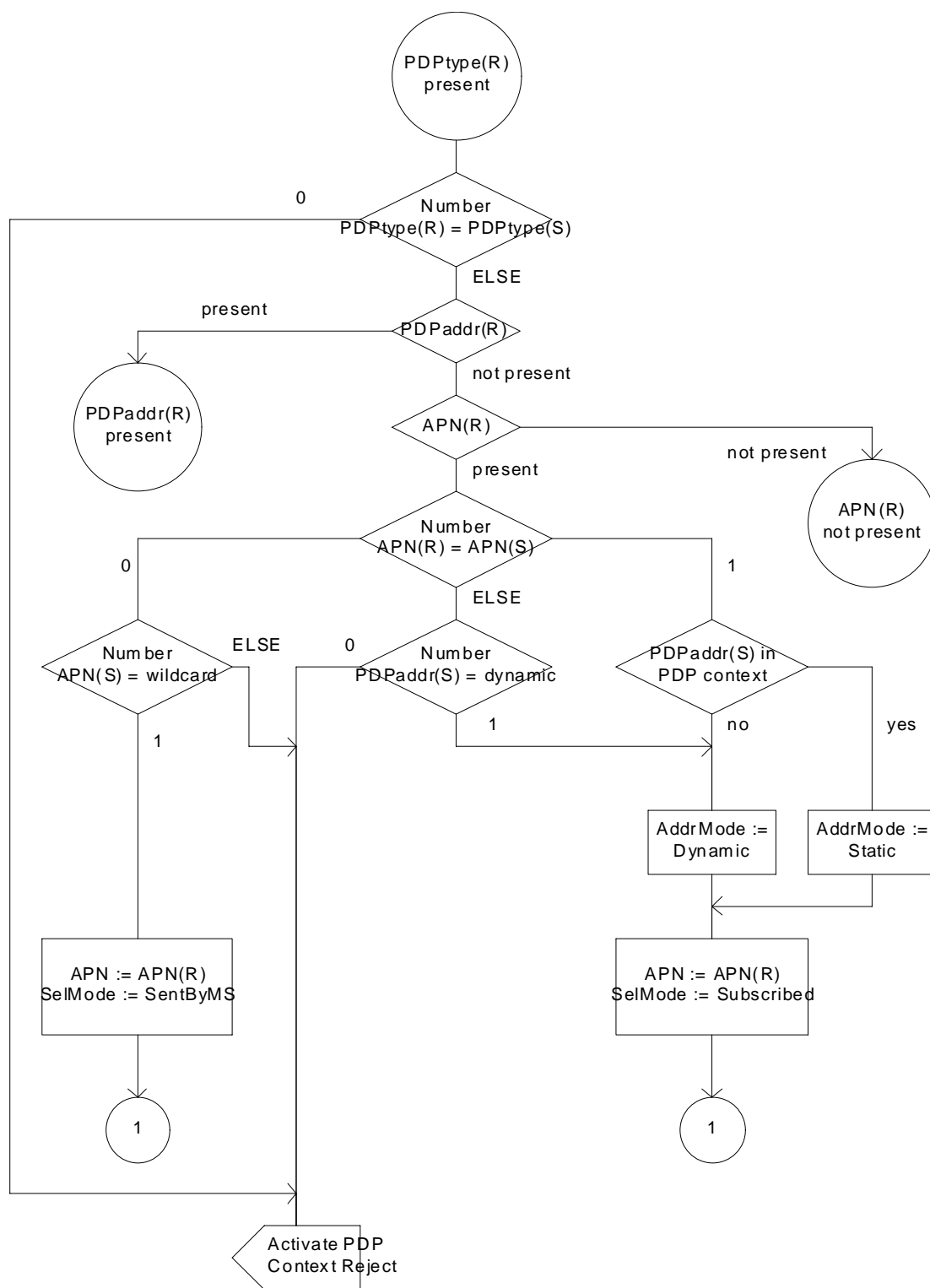


Figure A.2: SDL Diagram 2

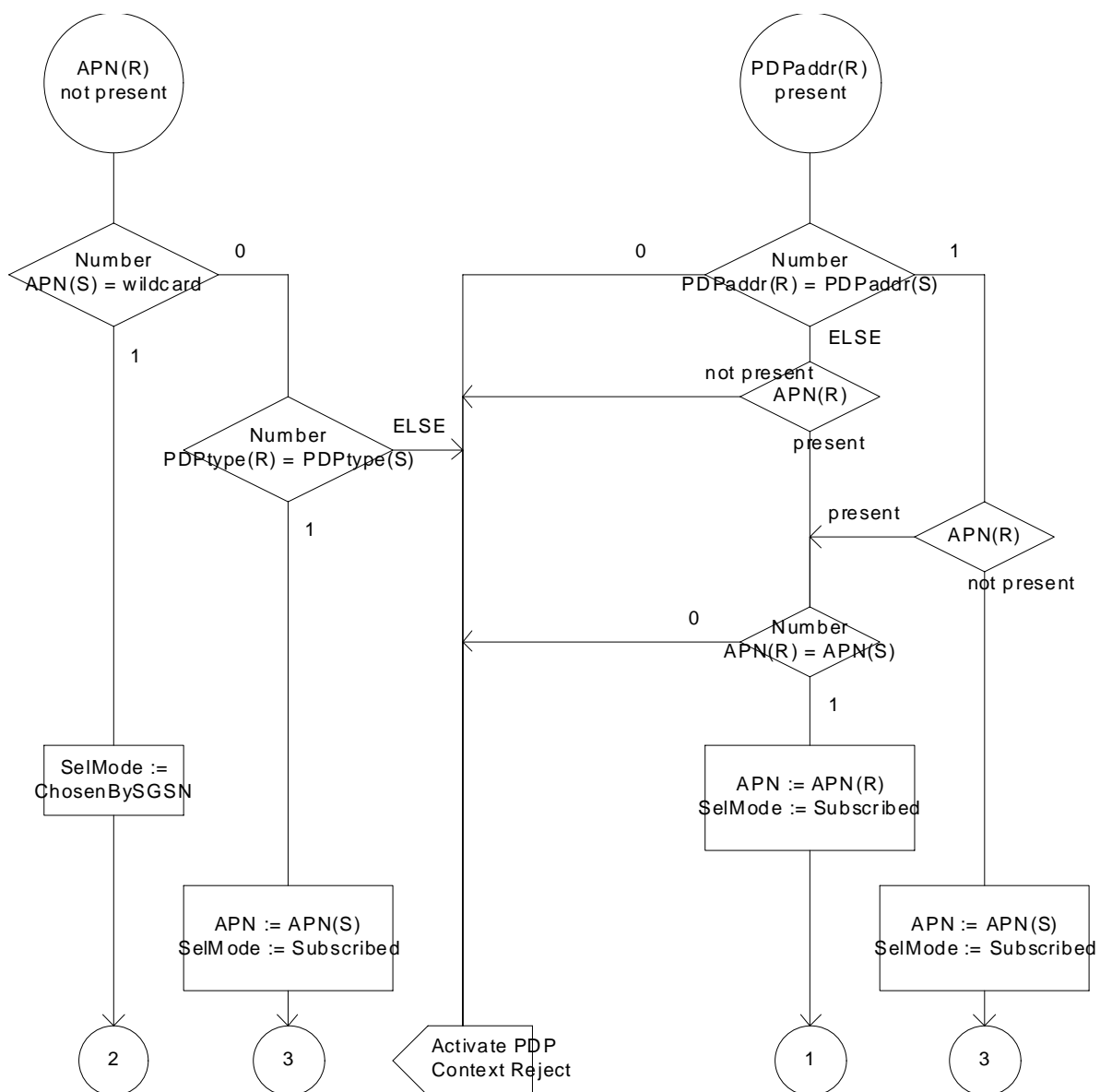


Figure A.3: SDL Diagram 3

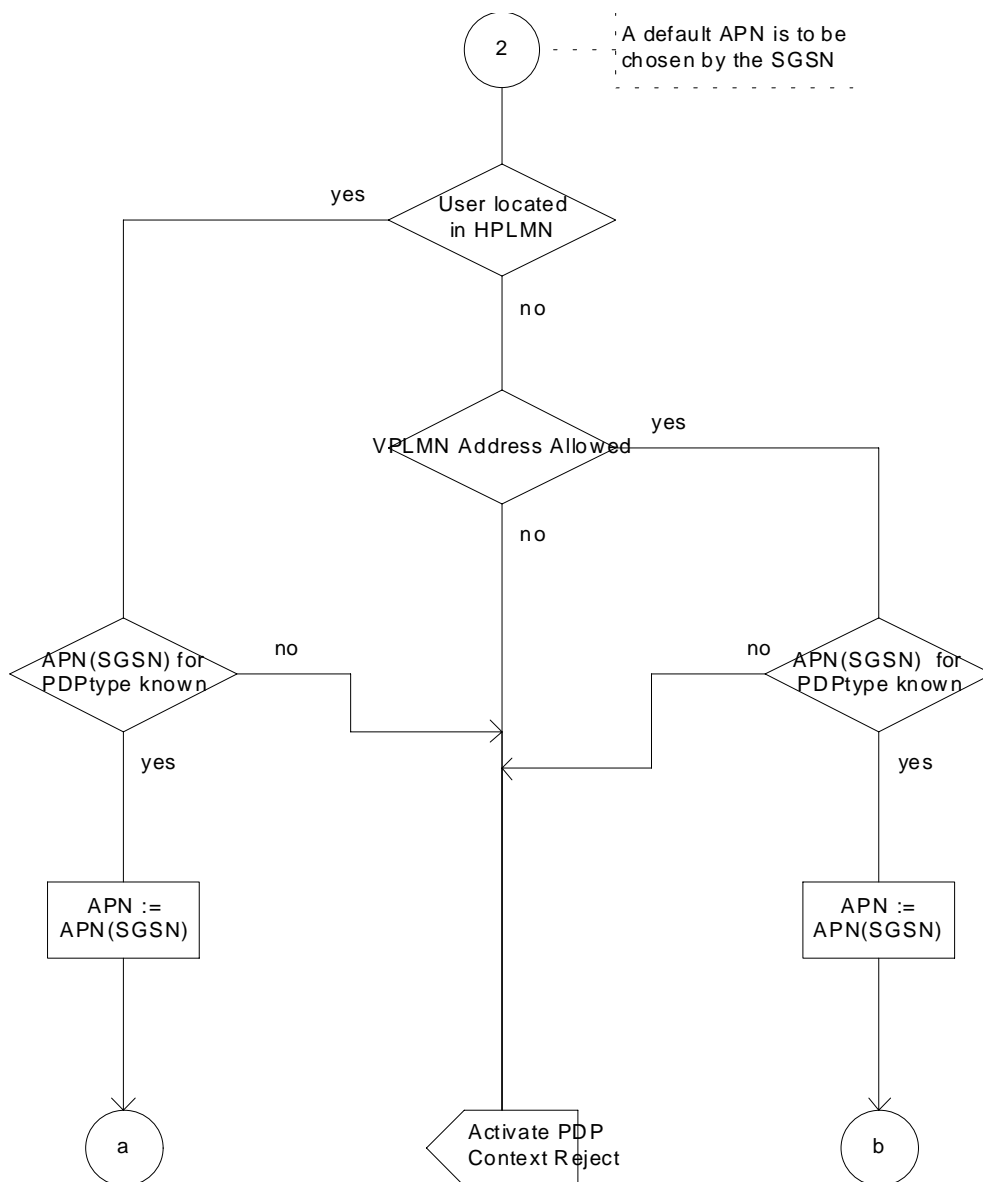
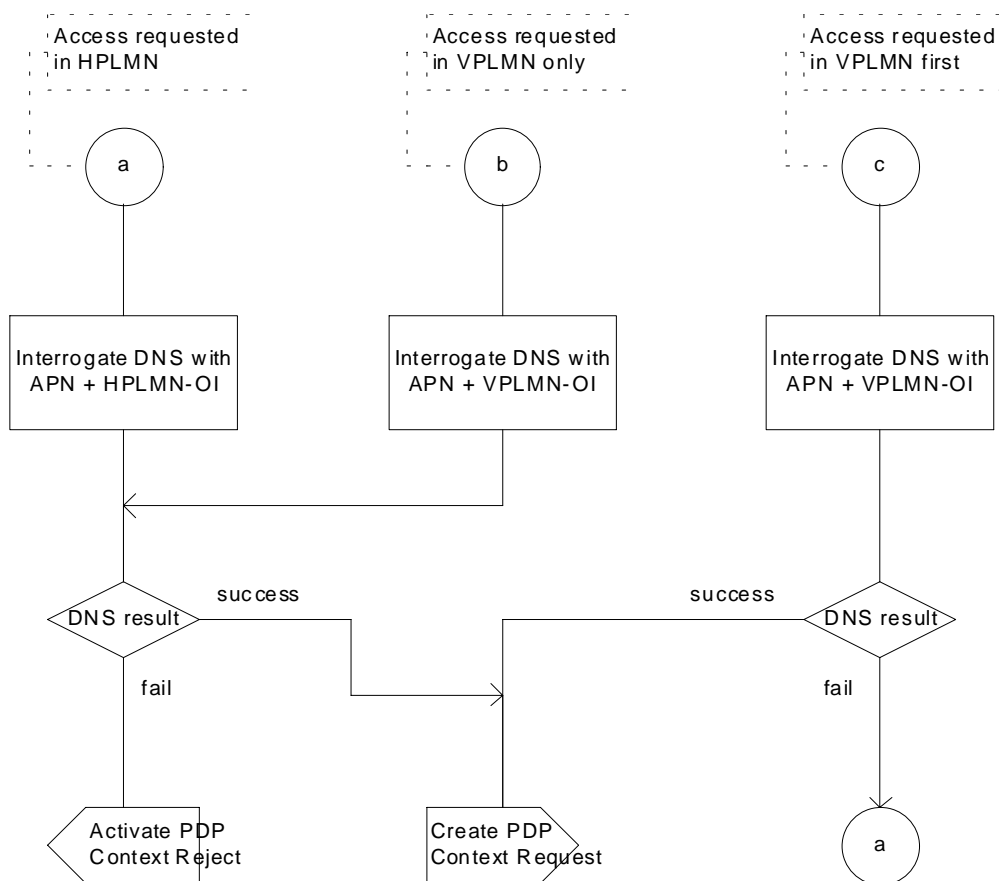


Figure A.5: SDL Diagram 5

**Figure A.6: SDL Diagram 6**

Annex B (normative): Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service

The GPRS Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service (IHOSS) is a connection-oriented service that can transport an unstructured octet (character) stream between a GPRS MS and an Internet host. The service uses the Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) PDP type to provide a "character pipe" between the MS and the GGSN. In the GGSN there is an interworking function which provides a relay function between the OSP and the Internet host.

Figure B.1 shows the scope of IHOSS and OSP.

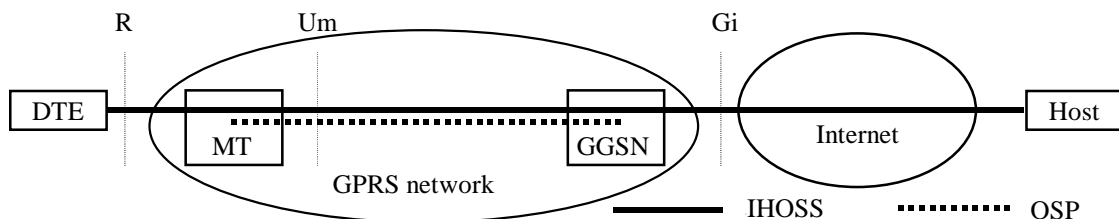


Figure B.1: Scope of IHOSS and OSP

IHOSS is analogous to a virtual serial cable between the MS and the Internet host.

This service is intended to provide a very simple connection for early implementation and for simple low-cost devices later on in the life cycle of GPRS.

B.1 Direction of Connection Setup

This service shall be mobile-originated only.

B.2 Bearer

The IHOSS shall use the unstructured Octet Stream Protocol as its bearer service.

The MT end of the IHOSS connection shall use the octet mode interface to the OSP as a Packet Assembler / Disassembler function is necessary.

The GGSN end of the IHOSS connection shall use the block mode interface to the OSP to remove the need for two back-to-back PAD functions.

B.3 Setup Data

The following data items are required before an octet stream can be initiated.

B.3.1 Protocol Type - TCP or UDP

This refers to the protocol used over IP on the GGSN to Internet host segment of the connection. The options available are TCP or UDP.

If no protocol is specified for a given context, TCP shall be used.

B.3.2 Host Name

This refers to the Internet host to which the connection is made. It shall be a fully formed domain name extended host name.

There shall be no default host name. If no host name is specified, the context activation shall fail.

B.3.3 Port Number

This refers to the TCP or UDP port on the host name, which forms the endpoint of the Internet side of the connection.

If no port number is specified for a given context, a default value of 23 decimal shall be used.

B.3.4 PAD Parameters

The Packet Assembler / Disassembler parameters determine how to fill the outgoing packets. If the user requires interactive terminal style behaviour then the PAD shall be able to act in this way. If the user requires a streaming data link then a different setup is necessary.

The default values for the PAD parameters are defined in GSM 07.60.

B.4 Flow Control

The service shall use the flow control features provided by the OSP to provide simple start / stop flow control.

B.5 Break Signal

The OSP break signals are mapped onto the appropriate break signals at the R and Gi interfaces.

B.6 Connection Establishment Procedure

Establishing an IHOSS connection involves setting up two segments, the PLMN segment (using the OSP) between the MS and the GGSN, and the fixed-network segment between the GGSN and the Internet host. Establishing the PLMN segment shall be as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". Figure B.2 illustrates the overall procedure.

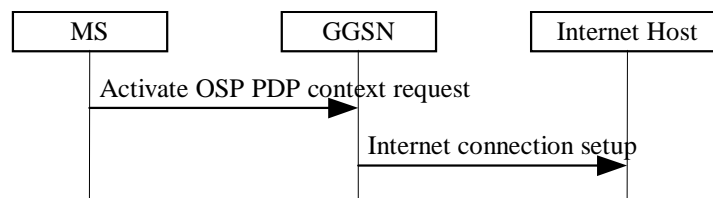


Figure B.2: IHOSS Connection Establishment

The MS requests that an OSP PDP context be activated by transmitting an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN with the following parameter values:

- NSAPI is selected by the MS.
- TI is selected by the MS.

- PDP Type shall have a two-part value. The first part shall identify the protocol as OSP, and the second part shall identify the service being used and thereby allow the SGSN to select a GGSN that can provide this service. For IHOSS PDP Type shall be set to OSP:IHOSS.
- PDP Address shall be empty.
- APN is selected by the MS, may be empty.
- QoS Requested is selected by the MS.
- PDP Configuration Options may contain an Internet host name, a port number, a protocol type, and possibly other parameters in order to enable the GGSN to set up a connection to the Internet host, or it may be empty.

The Activate PDP Context Accept message shall be returned to the MS only after the connection to the Internet host has been established.

The activation parameters shall be provided as either interactive commands or via a system-default value. The following subclauses describe how these parameters shall be derived for a number of different scenarios.

B.6.1 Fully User-Specified Establishment

The MS shall request an OSP:IHOSS connection, specifying the PAD parameters, the host name, the port, and the protocol (UDP or TCP) in PDP Configuration Options.

The SGSN shall select an appropriate GGSN for the outgoing connection.

The GGSN shall attempt to establish a connection with the specified host. Connection failure shall be signalled back to the MS and the session terminated. A successful connection establishment enables data transmission over the connection.

B.6.2 Default Internet Endpoint Parameters Establishment

The MS shall request an OSP:IHOSS connection, specifying only PAD parameters that deviate from the system defaults.

The SGSN shall connect to the GGSN indicated by the APN in the HLR subscription record.

The GGSN shall use the APN to further select the host name, the port number, and the protocol. The method used to select these parameters is manufacturer specific and outside of the scope of the specifications.

B.7 Connection Termination

Either the MS or the Internet host may request that a connection be cleared.

B.7.1 MS-initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination

The MS clears the connection by sending a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the SGSN. This shall result in the TCP session closure procedures being executed by the GGSN. Once this is complete, the GGSN shall deallocate any resources allocated for this session.

B.7.2 MS-initiated UDP IHOSS Connection Termination

No further action is required by the GGSN towards the Internet endpoint, as the User Datagram Protocol is connectionless. The GGSN shall deallocate any resources allocated for this session.

B.7.3 Internet Host Initiated TCP IHOOSS Connection Termination

When the GGSN receives a TCP clear request from the fixed network it shall follow the procedure described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

B.8 Security

B.8.1 Authentication of the GPRS User

Identification and authentication of the subscriber by the GPRS network is carried out as described elsewhere in the present document. The GPRS network shall not provide any identification of the GPRS subscriber to the Internet host. End-to-end security is provided at the application layer and is outside of the scope of the present document.

B.8.2 Malicious Reconfiguration of the GPRS Device

An MS that can not hold protocol, host name, and port information, would render it impossible to gain unauthorised access and subvert the system by providing alternative protocol, host name, or port information. This information would have to be provided by the GGSN, which is potentially more physically secure than the embedded MT, and it would make "man in the middle" type security breaches considerably more complex.

B.9 Maintenance

Configuring the Internet endpoint by accepting a mandatory default endpoint from the GGSN enables a GPRS user to effect system reconfiguration without the requirement for a site visit for each GPRS MS. The association between the APN and the host name, port number and protocol in the GGSN would be updated to give a new host name and/or port number and/or protocol.

Annex C (normative): IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration Procedure

IPv6 address allocation is somewhat different from the IPv4 address allocation procedure. There are two possibilities to allocate the address for an IPv6 node – stateless and stateful autoconfiguration. The stateful address allocation mechanism needs a DHCP server to allocate the address for the IPv6 node. In the stateless autoconfiguration, the IPv6 node is more involved in the allocation of the address. In addition, the stateless autoconfiguration procedure does not need any external entity involved in the address autoconfiguration.

IPv6 stateful address autoconfiguration uses the standard External PDN Address Allocation procedure. The MS requests stateful address autoconfiguration by using an Access Point Name referring to that service.

The IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration procedure is illustrated in Figure C.1.

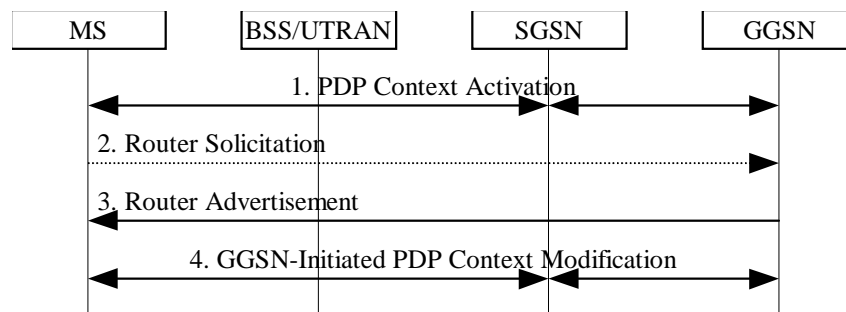


Figure C.1: IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration Procedure

- 1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request message to the SGSN, see subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The MS shall leave PDP Address empty and set PDP Type to IPv6. Otherwise, the PDP context activation is as for PDP type IPv4. The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request message. The Create PDP Context procedure from the SGSN side is as defined for PDP type IPv4 except that only dynamic address allocation shall be used.

The GGSN shall create the link-local address for the MS and send it in the PDP Address information element in the Create PDP Context Response message. The link local address consists of a fixed 10-bit prefix (IPv6 well-known link-local prefix), zero or more 0 bits, and the interface identifier. Otherwise, the procedure is as defined for PDP type IPv4.

- 2) The MS may send a Router Solicitation message to the GGSN to activate the sending of the Router Advertisement message.
- 3) The GGSN should automatically send the Router Advertisement message after the PDP context is activated. In release 99 the GGSN shall be configured to advertise only one network prefix.

After the MS has received the Router Advertisement message it constructs its full IPv6 address and is ready to start communicating to the Internet.

The MS may send a Neighbour Solicitation message to the network to make sure that the IPv6 address it has is unique. The GGSN shall intercept and discard any such message.

- 4) The GGSN updates the PDP context in the SGSN with the full IPv6 address, see subclause "GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure".

Annex D (informative): Figures

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 1: Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points..... | 18 |
| Figure 2: Overview of the Packet Domain Logical Architecture | 22 |
| Figure 3: Intra- and Inter-PLMN Backbone Networks..... | 23 |
| Figure 4: User Plane for GSM | 26 |
| Figure 5: User Plane GSN - GSN | 27 |
| Figure 6: User Plane for UMTS..... | 27 |
| Figure 7: Control Plane MS - 2G-SGSN | 28 |
| Figure 8: Control Plane MS - 3G-SGSN | 29 |
| Figure 9: Control Plane SGSN - HLR | 29 |
| Figure 10: Control Plane SGSN - MSC/VLR..... | 30 |
| Figure 11: Control Plane SGSN - EIR..... | 30 |
| Figure 12: Control Plane SGSN - SMS-GMSC and SGSN - SMS-IWMSC..... | 30 |
| Figure 13: Control Plane GSN - GSN | 31 |
| Figure 14: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using MAP | 31 |
| Figure 15: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using GTP and MAP | 32 |
| Figure 16: Functional Mobility Management State Model..... | 34 |
| Figure 17: PMM State Model..... | 36 |
| Figure 18: CS Paging Procedure..... | 41 |
| Figure 19: MS Information Procedure..... | 43 |
| Figure 20: MM Information Procedure | 44 |
| Figure 21: Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure..... | 46 |
| Figure 22: MS-Initiated Combined GPRS / IMSI Detach Procedure..... | 49 |
| Figure 23: SGSN-Initiated GPRS Detach Procedure..... | 50 |
| Figure 24: HLR-Initiated GPRS Detach Procedure..... | 51 |
| Figure 25: Purge Procedure | 52 |
| Figure 26: Authentication of GSM Subscriber Procedure | 53 |
| Figure 27: Authentication of UMTS Subscriber Procedure..... | 53 |
| Figure 28: P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure | 54 |
| Figure 29: Scope of Ciphering..... | 55 |
| Figure 30: Identity Check Procedure..... | 55 |
| Figure 31: Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure | 57 |
| Figure 32: Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure | 58 |

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 33: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Intra SGSN RA Update Procedure | 61 |
| Figure 34: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Inter SGSN RA Update Procedure | 63 |
| Figure 35: UMTS RA Update Procedure | 67 |
| Figure 36: Before SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update | 70 |
| Figure 37: After SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update..... | 71 |
| Figure 38: Serving SRNS Relocation Procedure | 72 |
| Figure 39: Before Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update | 75 |
| Figure 40: After Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation and Routeing Area Update..... | 75 |
| Figure 41: Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation Procedure | 76 |
| Figure 42: Combined Cell / URA Update and SRNS Relocation Procedure..... | 79 |
| Figure 43: Control Plane MS - Non-GSM MSC/VLR | 83 |
| Figure 44: Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure | 83 |
| Figure 45: Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure | 83 |
| Figure 46: Insert Subscriber Data Procedure | 84 |
| Figure 47: Delete Subscriber Data Procedure..... | 85 |
| Figure 46: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure..... | 86 |
| Figure 49: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure..... | 87 |
| Figure 50: UMTS to GSM Intra SGSN Change | 89 |
| Figure 51: GSM to UMTS Intra SGSN Change | 92 |
| Figure 52: UMTS to GSM Inter SGSN Change | 95 |
| Figure 53: GSM to UMTS Inter SGSN Change | 100 |
| Figure 54: GPRS Paging Procedure | 105 |
| Figure 55: RRC Modes, Main RRC States and Main Mode and State Transition..... | 106 |
| Figure 56: PS Paging Without RRC Connection for CS | 107 |
| Figure 57: PS Paging With RRC Connection for CS | 108 |
| Figure 56: URA Paging Procedure | 109 |
| Figure 57: Functional PDP State Model | 110 |
| Figure 60: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GSM..... | 111 |
| Figure 61: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS | 112 |
| Figure 62: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GSM..... | 114 |
| Figure 63: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS | 114 |
| Figure 64: Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure | 116 |
| Figure 65: Protection Procedure | 117 |
| Figure 66: Mobile User Activity Procedure | 118 |
| Figure 67: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure | 119 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 68: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure | 120 |
| Figure 69: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure..... | 120 |
| Figure 70: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GSM | 122 |
| Figure 71: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS..... | 122 |
| Figure 72: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure | 123 |
| Figure 73: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure | 124 |
| Figure 74: RAB Release Procedure | 125 |
| Figure 75: Iu Release Procedure..... | 125 |
| Figure 76: Multiplexing of Network Protocols..... | 131 |
| Figure 77: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality | 132 |
| Figure 78: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP | 133 |
| Figure 79: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP..... | 133 |
| Figure 80: GSM User Plane for PDP Type PPP | 135 |
| Figure 81: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP | 135 |
| Figure 82: BSSGP Protocol Position..... | 136 |
| Figure 83: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure | 139 |
| Figure 84: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure..... | 139 |
| Figure 85: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure..... | 140 |
| Figure 86: Iu User Plane Protocol Configuration for Packet-Switched Traffic | 141 |
| Figure 87: Iu Release Procedure..... | 142 |
| Figure 88: RAB Assignment Procedure | 143 |
| Figure 87: Location Reporting Procedure | 144 |
| Figure 90: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions..... | 145 |
| Figure 91: Packet Domain Subscription Data..... | 146 |
| Figure 92: Use of NSAPI and TLLI | 154 |
| Figure 93: Use of NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID..... | 155 |
| Figure 94: MT SMS Transfer, Successful | 162 |
| Figure 95: MT SMS Transfer, Unsuccessful | 163 |
| Figure 96: MO SMS Transfer, Successful..... | 164 |
| Figure 97: Suspend and Resume Procedure | 165 |

Annex E (informative): Tables

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 1: Mapping of Functions to Logical Architecture..... | 25 |
| Table 2: Network Operation Modes for GSM | 42 |
| Table 3: Network Operation Modes for UMTS..... | 42 |
| Table 4: Mapping of High-level Functions Across the Gb Architecture | 137 |
| Table 5: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data | 147 |
| Table 6: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts..... | 148 |
| Table 7: GGSN PDP Context | 149 |
| Table 8: MS MM and PDP Contexts | 150 |
| Table 9: MSC/VLR Association..... | 151 |
| Table 10: BSS Context | 151 |
| Table 11: RNC Context | 152 |
| Table 12: Valid Packet Filter Attribute Combinations | 160 |

Annex F (informative): Change History

| TSG SA# | Spec | Version | CR | <Phase> | New Version | Subject/Comment |
|----------|-----------|---------|--------|---------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Aug 1999 | GSM 03.60 | 8.0.0 | | | | Transferred to 3GPP CN1 |
| CN#04 | 23.060 | | | | 3.0.0 | Approved at CN#04 |
| SA#05 | 03.60 | 7.1.0 | A085r8 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Involvement of BSS in QoS provisioning |
| SA#05 | 03.60 | 7.1.0 | A164r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Parallel handling of multiple user application flows |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 001 | R99 | 3.1.0 | APN and GGSN selection SDL diagrams |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 002 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Ga interface to the GPRS Logical Architecture diagram etc. |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 003 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Modification information is not piggybacked |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 004r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | MM states in UMTS |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 005r2 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Introduction of Iu Release procedure |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 006r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Addition of APN parameter in Network-requested PDP context activation procedures |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 007r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Introduction of Service Request procedure |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 008r2 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Introduction of LOCATION REPORTING procedure |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 009 | R99 | 3.1.0 | MS and GSN-initiated PDP context modification |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 010 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Introduction of EGPRS |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 014r2 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Mobile terminated packet transfer to UE in PMM-Idle state |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 015r2 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Clarification on multiplexing of several NSAPIS onto one LLC SAPI |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 016 | R99 | 3.1.0 | PDP Context Deactivation during an activation |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 018r2 | R99 | 3.1.0 | 23.060 Section 1, 4 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 019r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Change in chapter 2, 3 of 23.060 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 020r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Changes in chapter 5 of 23.060 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 021r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Updating of Section 9 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 022r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Changes in chapter 7, 8 of 23.060 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 023r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Adaptation to UMTS in chapter 13 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 024r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Adaptation to UMTS in chapter 14 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 025 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Extension of PDP type IP to support e.g. End-to-End DHCP or Mobile IP |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 027r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Addition of Paging Co-ordination for UMTS |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 028 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Modification of the definition and the usage of network operation mode |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 029r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | 3G TS 23.060 v3.1.0 DRAFT 2 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 030r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Authentication and security keys agreement for support of GSM-UMTS Interoperability |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 031r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Introduction of UMTS security |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 032 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Changes in chapter 11 of 23.060 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 033r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Changes in chapter 12 of 23.060 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 036r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | CR to chapters 6.6 |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 037r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Interactions between 3G-SGSN and MSC/VLR for UMTS |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 038r3 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Location Management and attach procedure for UMTS |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 040 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Handling of lost of coverage for UMTS |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 041r2 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Mobility Management states and state transitions for UMTS |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 042r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Introduction of UMTS MS classes |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 044r2 | R99 | 3.1.0 | UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Handover |
| SA#05 | 23.060 | 3.0.0 | 045r1 | R99 | 3.1.0 | Consistent Sequence Numbering of GTP-PDUs on Iu and Gn interfaces |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 013r2 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Traffic Flow Templates (TFT) for packet filtering |

| TSG SA# | Spec | Version | CR | <Phase> | New Version | Subject/Comment |
|---------|--------|---------|-------|---------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 017r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Removal of BB Protocol |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 043r2 | R99 | 3.2.0 | GPRS QoS Parameters |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 046r3 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Addition of the sections of NSAPI, RB identity, RAB ID for UMTS and of TEID |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 047r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | MS Initiated TFT modification, addition and deletion |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 048r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | interaction points for GPRS/CAMEL interwork |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 049r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Description of Mobility Agents in Mobile IP |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 051 | R99 | 3.2.0 | No (P-)TMSI in Complete messages |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 053r3 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Releases 97, 98 and 99 interactions |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 055r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Clarification of MM procedures in PMM-IDLE for common UMTS/GSM RA |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 059r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | UMTS <-> GPRS Intersystem change (handover) |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 060r2 | R99 | 3.2.0 | UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Handover |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 061r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Move of BSS Packet Flow Context Procedures |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 066r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Improving charging efficiency |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 067r2 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Subscriber and equipment trace for PS domain |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 068r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | BSS QoS involvement improvements |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 069 | R99 | 3.2.0 | GPRS Mobile Stations classes |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 070r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Usage of TI in the secondary PDP context activation procedure |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 071 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Logical Link Management Functions for GPRS |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 072 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Packet Domain Core Network Nodes |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 073 | R99 | 3.2.0 | User Plane for UMTS |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 074 | R99 | 3.2.0 | UTRAN Registration Area Identity and Cell Identity |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 075r2 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Unnecessary of cell identity and cell identity age in 3G-SGSN MM context |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 076 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Deletion of TFT in 3G-SGSN PDP context |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 077 | R99 | 3.2.0 | The number of RNC RAB contexts in a RNC context |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 078r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | The usage of reordering required parameter |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 079r1 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Information storage in USIM |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 081 | R99 | 3.2.0 | CS paging response |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 082 | R99 | 3.2.0 | SMS support in 3G-SGSN |
| SA#06 | 23.060 | 3.1.0 | 083r3 | R99 | 3.2.0 | Usage of secondary PDP context activation procedure |
| - | 23.060 | 3.2.0 | - | R99 | 3.2.1 | Editorial correction in the first page of 23.060 v3.2.0 |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 052r2 | R99 | 3.3.0 | QoS Related Updates |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 065r5 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Radio bearer release and PDP context interaction |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 080r2 | R99 | 3.3.0 | GPRS Interworking With CAMEL |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 085 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Storage of Aggregated BSS QoS Profile in the SGSN |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 086 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Modification to selective routing area update procedure |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 088r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | QoS delay budget in CN and RAN. |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 089r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Release of RABs Without PDP Context Modification |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 090 | R99 | 3.3.0 | NSAPI as RAB identifier for packet |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 091 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Correction to GPRS/CAMEL interworking. |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 092 | R99 | 3.3.0 | IP Multicast support in GPRS. |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 094 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Removal of the description of the cell reselection algorithm from 23.060 |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 096 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Removal of PDP Type X.25 support |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 097r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | AAL5 description |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 098 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Removal of Anonymous Access support |

| TSG SA# | Spec | Version | CR | <Phase> | New Version | Subject/Comment |
|---------|--------|---------|-------|---------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 099 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Removal of TCP support in the packet domain PLMN backbone network |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 100r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | IPv6 as optional Iu and Gn protocol |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 101r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Common GPRS and UMTS PS attach procedure |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 102r3 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Classmark handling |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 103r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | UMTS Authentication |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 104r3 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Hard handover with switching in CN |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 105r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Transfer of present RA information from UTRAN to SGSN |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 106r2 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Service Request |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 107 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Correction to Address allocation procedure for PDP Type IPv6 |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 108r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Aligning SRNC relocation procedure |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 109r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | PDPC sequence numbers in SRNC relocation |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 110r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | RAB Assignment Description |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 112r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Removing NSAPI from GTP-C response messages |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 114r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Clarification of RANAP and GTP procedures in SRNS relocation |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 116 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Subscriber and equipment trace for PS domain |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 119 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Extension of Maximum N-PDU size in case of PDP type = PPP |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 121 | R99 | 3.3.0 | User control screening in R99 |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 122 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Improving charging efficiency |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 123 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Removal of P-TMSI Signature in Service Request |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 125r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Clarification of unsuccessful RAB assignment |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 127r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Volume based charging |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 128 | R99 | 3.3.0 | PDPC sequence numbers in SRNC relocation and inter-system handover |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 129r2 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Combined Cell Update/URA Update and SRNS Relocation |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 130r2 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Serving RNC Relocation Procedure |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 131r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Support for combined procedures also at UMTS<->GSM Inter System Change |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 133r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | PDP Type to RNC Context |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 134r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | PDP Context modification on RAB Release |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 135 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Clarification on Iu interface |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 136r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Adaptation of 23.060 terminology with the N1 agreement |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 138 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Deletion of GGSN TEID in the update PDP context request message |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 139 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Action upon reception of GTP-u PDU in the case of SGSN/GGSN failure |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 140 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Clarification of intra-SGSN inter-system change to GPRS |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 141r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Clarification of intra-SGSN inter-system change to UMTS |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 142 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Clarification of inter-SGSN inter-system change to GPRS |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 143 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Clarification of inter SGSN intersystem change to UMTS |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 144r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Clarification of MS information procedure in UMTS |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 145 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Change to the IP-V6 address allocation |
| SA#07 | 23.060 | 3.2.1 | 146r1 | R99 | 3.3.0 | Correction to stateless address autoconfiguration procedure for PDP Type IPv6 |
| - | 23.060 | 3.3.0 | - | R99 | 3.3.1 | Editorial corrections |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 147r3 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Changed the Cell update procedure |

| TSG SA# | Spec | Version | CR | <Phase> | New Version | Subject/Comment |
|---------|--------|---------|-------|---------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 149 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added PDP PDU in the bullet 1 and Fig. 55 |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 150 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added suspend of packet services for intersystem change from UMTS to GSM during CS connection |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 151 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added RABs failed information to Forward Relocation Response |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 152 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Reliable transfer of GTP message "Forward SRNS Context" and "Forward Relocation Complete" |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 153 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Editorial corrections in SRNS Relocation Procedures |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 156 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added conversion of QoS attributes to LLC attributes |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 159 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Clarification of radio-bearer re-establishment |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 161r2 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added SNRS Relocation and Inter System HO without support lossless relocation |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 162r1 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added establishment of LLC link after inter-system HO |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 163r1 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Clarified classmark handling |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 164 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added reset of RLC during SRNS relocation |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 165r1 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Moved Detection Point C2 for Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 166r1 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added charging characteristics per PDP context |
| SA#08 | 23.060 | 3.3.1 | 168 | R99 | 3.4.0 | Added reference to TS 32.015 |

| Document history | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| V3.0.0 | August 1999 | Approved at TSG CN#4. Under TSG CN Change Control. |
| DRAFT-1 V3.1.0 | September 1999 | For use at the 5-7 October 1999 3G TS 23.060 drafting session in Helsinki. |
| DRAFT-2 V3.1.0 | October 1999 | Developed during the 5-7 October 1999 3G TS 23.060 drafting session in Helsinki. |
| V3.1.0 | October 1999 | Incorporation of all the CRs approved by TSG SA2 and TSG SA#5. |
| V3.2.0 | December 1999 | Incorporation of all the CRs approved by TSG SA2 and TSG SA#6. |
| V3.2.1 | January 2000 | Editorial correction in the first cover page of 3G TS 23.060 v3.2.0 |
| V3.3.0 | April 2000 | |
| V3.3.1 | May 2000 | Editorial corrections |
| V3.4.0 | July 2000 | Incorporation of all the CRs approved by TSG SA2 and TSG SA#8. |

History

| Document history | | |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|
| V3.2.1 | January 2000 | Publication |
| V3.3.0 | April 2000 | Publication |
| V3.4.0 | July 2000 | Publication |
| | | |
| | | |